

# VIRTUAL APPLIANCE DEPLOYMENT

SOLUTIONS GUIDE

APRIL 2017



## **NOTICE**

The information contained in this document is believed to be accurate in all respects but is not warranted by Mitel Networks™ Corporation (MITEL®). The information is subject to change without notice and should not be construed in any way as a commitment by Mitel or any of its affiliates or subsidiaries. Mitel and its affiliates and subsidiaries assume no responsibility for any errors or omissions in this document. Revisions of this document or new editions of it may be issued to incorporate such changes.

No part of this document can be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means - electronic or mechanical - for any purpose without written permission from Mitel Networks Corporation.

## **Trademarks**

The trademarks, service marks, logos and graphics (collectively "Trademarks") appearing on Mitel's Internet sites or in its publications are registered and unregistered trademarks of Mitel Networks Corporation (MNC) or its subsidiaries (collectively "Mitel") or others. Use of the Trademarks is prohibited without the express consent from Mitel. Please contact our legal department at [legal@mitel.com](mailto:legal@mitel.com) for additional information. For a list of the worldwide Mitel Networks Corporation registered trademarks, please refer to the website: <http://www.mitel.com/trademarks>.

## **Virtual Appliance Deployment Solutions Guide**

Release 23

April 2017

®,™ Trademark of Mitel Networks Corporation  
© Copyright 2011-2017, Mitel Networks Corporation  
All rights reserved

## Chapter 1: Introduction

|                                                                |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Introduction . . . . .                                         | 3  |
| Benefits of virtualization . . . . .                           | 4  |
| Software requirements . . . . .                                | 6  |
| VMware software requirements . . . . .                         | 6  |
| Hyper-V software requirements . . . . .                        | 7  |
| Mitel Product version support for VMware and Hyper-V . . . . . | 8  |
| Hardware requirements . . . . .                                | 9  |
| Documentation and Resources . . . . .                          | 10 |

## Chapter 2: Deploying on a VMware infrastructure

|                                                                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Deploying Mitel virtual applications on a VMware virtual infrastructure . . . . . | 13 |
| Architecture and topology of Mitel virtual solutions. . . . .                     | 14 |
| Deployment considerations . . . . .                                               | 16 |
| Deployment types . . . . .                                                        | 16 |
| Preparing the VMware infrastructure . . . . .                                     | 17 |
| Host servers and clustering . . . . .                                             | 17 |
| Networking . . . . .                                                              | 18 |
| Storage . . . . .                                                                 | 18 |
| VMware vSphere support by Mitel product release . . . . .                         | 20 |
| Host server sizing and resource management considerations . . . . .               | 21 |
| Increasing resources for larger dimensions . . . . .                              | 28 |
| CPU and memory resource reservation . . . . .                                     | 29 |
| Resource dimensioning . . . . .                                                   | 29 |
| Storage provisioning . . . . .                                                    | 30 |
| Resource sharing guidelines . . . . .                                             | 30 |
| Other virtual appliance management considerations . . . . .                       | 32 |
| Supported VMware features. . . . .                                                | 34 |
| Resiliency, high availability, and disaster recovery. . . . .                     | 36 |
| System resiliency without VMware high availability features . . . . .             | 36 |
| System resiliency with VMware high availability features . . . . .                | 36 |
| VMware High Availability (HA) . . . . .                                           | 38 |
| Admission control for High Availability (HA) clusters . . . . .                   | 40 |
| vSphere Replication . . . . .                                                     | 42 |

|                                                               |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| VMware Fault Tolerance (FT) .....                             | 43 |
| VMware Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS) and vMotion ..... | 43 |
| VMware Site Recovery Manager (SRM) .....                      | 44 |

### Chapter 3: Deploying on Microsoft Hyper-V Infrastructure

|                                                                                |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Deploying Mitel virtual applications in a Hyper-V virtual infrastructure ..... | 49 |
| Preparing the Hyper-V infrastructure .....                                     | 49 |
| Adding NICs .....                                                              | 50 |
| Storage .....                                                                  | 50 |
| Host server sizing and resource management considerations .....                | 51 |
| Resource dimensioning .....                                                    | 53 |
| Resource sharing guidelines .....                                              | 54 |
| Clock Sync .....                                                               | 54 |
| Keep host NIC driver up-to-date .....                                          | 54 |
| Product-specific guidelines .....                                              | 54 |
| Installing and upgrading on Hyper-V .....                                      | 56 |
| Installing Mitel virtual applications on Hyper-V virtual machines .....        | 57 |
| Create the virtual environment .....                                           | 57 |
| Install and configure Mitel Standard Linux on the virtual machine .....        | 58 |
| Install the Mitel application .....                                            | 58 |
| Upgrading Mitel applications on Hyper-V .....                                  | 58 |
| Upgrade backup/restore variants .....                                          | 58 |
| Supported upgrade methods .....                                                | 59 |
| Hyper-V software and versions .....                                            | 60 |

### Chapter 4: Mitel Application Management Center (AMC)

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| AMC licensing .....                          | 63 |
| About AMC licensing .....                    | 63 |
| Supported networking configurations .....    | 64 |
| Specific appliance restrictions .....        | 65 |
| On-line licensing through a proxy .....      | 65 |
| Proxies that have been tested with AMC ..... | 66 |
| MSL Sync using Proxy .....                   | 69 |

### Chapter 5: Security in Mitel/VMware Virtual Networks

|                                                      |    |
|------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Security in Mitel VMware deployments .....           | 73 |
| vCloud Networking and Security (vCNS) Overview ..... | 73 |
| vShield Manager .....                                | 73 |

|                                                                             |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| vCNS .....                                                                  | 73 |
| vCNS Security Topologies .....                                              | 76 |
| General Best Practices .....                                                | 76 |
| Topology 1: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MBG Virtual Parallel with vCNS ..... | 76 |
| Topology description .....                                                  | 78 |
| Topology 2: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MBG Virtual Behind vCNS .....        | 79 |
| Topology description .....                                                  | 80 |
| Topology 3: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MiVoice Business Express .....       | 80 |
| Topology description .....                                                  | 81 |
| Topology 4: vCNS Based Public Cloud .....                                   | 82 |
| Topology description .....                                                  | 84 |
| Topology 5: vCNS Based Public Cloud - MiVoice Business Express .....        | 85 |
| Topology description .....                                                  | 87 |
| Topology advantages, disadvantages, and recommended applications .....      | 88 |
| Network component configuration by Topology type .....                      | 91 |

## Chapter 6: vCloud Director Support

|                                                                        |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| vCloud Director Support .....                                          | 97  |
| vCloud Director overview .....                                         | 97  |
| How vCloud Director capabilities are supported in Mitel products ..... | 99  |
| Creating and publishing virtual application Catalog Templates .....    | 99  |
| Unpack and publish OVA in Linux .....                                  | 100 |
| Unpack and publish OVA in Microsoft® Windows® .....                    | 100 |
| Import VM from vSphere .....                                           | 102 |
| General settings for Catalog Template items .....                      | 103 |
| Deploying and configuring virtual applications from catalogs .....     | 104 |
| Deployment differences relative to vSphere .....                       | 105 |
| Post-deployment configuration .....                                    | 105 |
| Run-time resource behavior of deployed virtual applications .....      | 106 |
| Pay-As-You-Go allocation model .....                                   | 107 |
| Allocation Pool allocation model .....                                 | 108 |
| Reservation Pool allocation model .....                                | 109 |
| Effects of other underlying resources .....                            | 110 |
| Modifying vApp Resourcing for Deployment Configuration .....           | 111 |
| vCloud Director Lease and Lease Expiry .....                           | 116 |
| Undeploying virtual applications .....                                 | 116 |
| Networking and security considerations .....                           | 118 |
| Deployment in a direct-connected, flat Organization network .....      | 118 |

|                                                                    |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Deployment in direct-connected, layered Organization network ..... | 120 |
| Deployment in NAT-routed Organization network .....                | 121 |
| Approach 1: Supported by MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual .....      | 122 |
| Approach 2: Supported by MiVoice Business Express .....            | 123 |

## Chapter 7: Installing and Upgrading

|                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Installing Mitel virtual appliances and applications ..... | 127 |
| Deploying Mitel virtual appliances in Hyper-V .....        | 127 |
| Deploying Mitel virtual appliances in VMware .....         | 127 |
| Disk provisioning .....                                    | 127 |
| Network driver .....                                       | 128 |
| Deploying Mitel OVAs .....                                 | 128 |
| Upgrading Mitel virtual appliances and applications .....  | 137 |
| Upgrading on Hyper-V .....                                 | 137 |
| Upgrading on VMware .....                                  | 137 |
| Software upgrades .....                                    | 138 |
| OVA upgrade advantages .....                               | 139 |
| MSL application blade upgrade advantages .....             | 139 |
| VMware virtual hardware versions .....                     | 139 |
| VMware software and versions .....                         | 141 |
| VMware Tools .....                                         | 144 |
| Supporting additional VMware features .....                | 146 |

## Chapter 8: Migrating to the Virtual Appliance

|                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Migrating from Mitel physical solution to a virtual deployment ..... | 151 |
| Migrating to Hyper-V .....                                           | 151 |
| Migrating to VMware .....                                            | 151 |
| MiVoice Business on Mitel 3300 ICP to MiVoice Business Virtual ..... | 153 |
| UC Advanced to vUCA/MiCollab Client Virtual .....                    | 154 |

## Chapter 9: Maintenance and Troubleshooting

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Maintenance .....                    | 157 |
| Backups .....                        | 157 |
| Backup Methods in Hyper-V .....      | 157 |
| Backup methods in VMware .....       | 157 |
| VMware Data Protection .....         | 159 |
| Backup routine recommendations ..... | 160 |

|                                                                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Restores .....                                                                                                       | 160 |
| MiCollab Virtual system recovery .....                                                                               | 160 |
| Monitoring resource usage and performance .....                                                                      | 161 |
| Troubleshooting .....                                                                                                | 162 |
| Troubleshooting virtual appliances in Hyper-V environment .....                                                      | 162 |
| Troubleshooting virtual appliances in VMware environment .....                                                       | 162 |
| Mitel Virtualization Diagnostic Tool (VDT) .....                                                                     | 162 |
| Collecting VMware logs .....                                                                                         | 163 |
| Virtualization Diagnostic Tool (VDT).....                                                                            | 166 |
| Using the VDT .....                                                                                                  | 166 |
| Required credentials .....                                                                                           | 166 |
| Virtual Machine properties .....                                                                                     | 167 |
| Storage Monitoring .....                                                                                             | 168 |
| Diagnostic Overview .....                                                                                            | 168 |
| Virtualization diagnostics credentials .....                                                                         | 169 |
| Log files .....                                                                                                      | 170 |
| Known issues (VMware infrastructure).....                                                                            | 174 |
| Mitel application performance issues when CPU and memory requirements are satisfied                                  | 174 |
| Mitel Virtual Appliance performance becomes sluggish in the presence of VMware snapshots                             | 175 |
| File system becomes read-only, causing Mitel Applications to go out of service .....                                 | 175 |
| Virtual Machine is no longer responsive, and is at or close to 100% CPU usage .....                                  | 177 |
| Slow network throughput for streaming or large file transfers .....                                                  | 177 |
| Mitel virtual machines are blocked during power up due to checking file systems unexpected inconsistency error ..... | 178 |
| Mitel virtual machines experience issues on power up after powering off .....                                        | 179 |
| Mitel resiliency solutions not working (such as MCD resiliency or MBG clustering) .....                              | 179 |
| Mitel application message record/playback or voice prompt issues .....                                               | 179 |
| Mitel application repeatedly resets after startup, or voice quality issues .....                                     | 180 |

## APPENDIX A: GLOSSARY

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Glossary of terms and acronyms ..... | 183 |
|--------------------------------------|-----|

## APPENDIX B: VMWARE VSPHERE STORAGE SETUP GUIDELINES

|                                                                            |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| VMware vSphere storage setup guidelines for Mitel virtual appliances ..... | 193 |
| Storage virtualization .....                                               | 193 |
| Hard disk drive types .....                                                | 193 |
| Mechanical hard disk drive .....                                           | 193 |
| Solid state disk (SSD) drive .....                                         | 194 |

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Types of storage .....                       | 194 |
| Local storage .....                          | 194 |
| Networked storage .....                      | 194 |
| RAID levels .....                            | 195 |
| RAID 0 .....                                 | 195 |
| RAID 1 .....                                 | 196 |
| RAID 10 .....                                | 196 |
| RAID 5 .....                                 | 196 |
| RAID 6 .....                                 | 196 |
| Virtual disk modes .....                     | 196 |
| Independent persistent .....                 | 196 |
| Independent non-persistent .....             | 196 |
| Dependent .....                              | 197 |
| Virtual disk types .....                     | 197 |
| Thick-provisioned .....                      | 197 |
| Thin-provisioned .....                       | 197 |
| Partition alignment .....                    | 197 |
| SAN multipathing .....                       | 197 |
| File systems .....                           | 198 |
| VMFS .....                                   | 198 |
| NFS .....                                    | 198 |
| Raw Disk .....                               | 198 |
| Recommendations .....                        | 198 |
| Storage network .....                        | 198 |
| RAID level .....                             | 199 |
| Virtual disk mode .....                      | 199 |
| Virtual disk types .....                     | 199 |
| Partition alignment .....                    | 199 |
| SAN multipathing .....                       | 199 |
| File system .....                            | 199 |
| Other considerations .....                   | 199 |
| CPU utilization .....                        | 199 |
| Separate physical NIC .....                  | 199 |
| Jumbo frames .....                           | 200 |
| vSphere flash read cache .....               | 200 |
| Storage hardware acceleration .....          | 200 |
| VMware-specific optimizations .....          | 200 |
| vSphere pluggable storage architecture ..... | 201 |
| Reference .....                              | 201 |



|                                                                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 1: VMware version support . . . . .                                           | 6   |
| Table 2: Hyper-V software requirements . . . . .                                    | 7   |
| Table 3: Mitel product version support . . . . .                                    | 8   |
| Table 4: Minimum hardware requirements . . . . .                                    | 9   |
| Table 5: Documentation and resources . . . . .                                      | 11  |
| Table 6: Comparing VSA and vSAN . . . . .                                           | 22  |
| Table 7: vSphere support by Mitel product - latest release . . . . .                | 22  |
| Table 8: Required Resource Reservation and Allocation . . . . .                     | 24  |
| Table 9: Engineering Guidelines documents for Mitel virtual applications . . . . .  | 32  |
| Table 10: Mitel support for Basic VMware features . . . . .                         | 33  |
| Table 11: Resiliency and high availability documentation . . . . .                  | 35  |
| Table 12: Mitel support for VMware resiliency features . . . . .                    | 36  |
| Table 13: Software version requirement for SRM solution . . . . .                   | 44  |
| Table 14: NICs required by Mitel virtual application and configuration . . . . .    | 48  |
| Table 15: Resource Requirements . . . . .                                           | 49  |
| Table 16: Engineering Guidelines documents for Mitel virtual applications . . . . . | 51  |
| Table 17: Installation parameters for Hyper-V . . . . .                             | 53  |
| Table 18: Topology comparisons and recommendations . . . . .                        | 84  |
| Table 19: Network component configuration by Topology type . . . . .                | 87  |
| Table 20: vCloud Director Key Concepts . . . . .                                    | 94  |
| Table 21: Linux method . . . . .                                                    | 96  |
| Table 22: Resource Settings vs. Allocation Model . . . . .                          | 102 |
| Table 23: Virtual Hardware support by Mitel virtual appliance . . . . .             | 128 |
| Table 24: VMware software versions by Mitel virtual appliance versions . . . . .    | 129 |
| Table 25: vCenter and vSphere compatibility with Mitel virtual appliances . . . . . | 130 |
| Table 26: VMware Tools packaging and upgrade by Mitel virtual appliance . . . . .   | 132 |
| Table 27: Additional VMware features . . . . .                                      | 134 |
| Table 28: Migration from Mitel hardware to Mitel virtual applications . . . . .     | 137 |
| Table 29: Mitel documentation for backup and restore . . . . .                      | 147 |
| Table 30: Recommended backup methods . . . . .                                      | 148 |
| Table 31: Troubleshooting guides for Mitel products . . . . .                       | 150 |
| Table 32: Feature by required credential level . . . . .                            | 155 |



# Chapter 1

## INTRODUCTION



## Introduction



**Note:** This revision of the guide describes features and compatibility related to:

- MiVoice Business Release 8.0
- MiCollab Release 7.3

The releases in this version of the guide align with MiCloud Business 3.3.

This guide describes the equipment, network, and configuration considerations that apply when setting up Mitel virtual appliances on servers enabled with VMware® vSphere™ virtualization or Microsoft Hyper-V. Mitel currently offers the following virtual appliances.

Supported in VMware:

- MiVoice Business Virtual
- MiCollab Virtual
- MiCollab Client Virtual
- MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual
- NuPoint Unified Messaging Virtual
- MiContact Center Office
- MiContact Center Business
- MiContact Center Enterprise (Formerly Solidus)
- MiVoice Call Recording
- Virtual Open Integration Gateway (vOIG)
- Virtual Contact Center (vCC), Virtual MiVoice Call Accounting, Virtual IVR, Virtual Contact Center Bundle
- MiVoice Business Express
- Mitel Oria Virtual
- MiCloud Management Gateway
- MiVoice Office 250

Supported in Hyper-V:

- MiVoice Business Virtual
- MiCollab Virtual
- MiCollab Client Virtual
- MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual
- NuPoint Unified Messaging Virtual
- MiContact Center
- MiVoice Business Express

The following Mitel applications are available as VMware-Ready® applications that you can install in a virtual machine:

- MiContact Center (also available as a virtual appliance, as shown in the list above)
- MiVoice Business Reporting (also available as a virtual appliance, as shown in the list above)
- MiVoice Enterprise Manager
- Mitel Live Business Gateway (LBG)

## Benefits of virtualization

Virtualization can offer significant benefits to a data center; they are described on the VMware and Hyper-V Web sites, and summarized here:

- Reduced capital expenditure on physical servers

Dedicated physical servers or appliances are not required for each application, resulting in server consolidation and hardware savings when using a virtual infrastructure. In addition, multiple operating systems can run on a single server.

- Reduced operations and maintenance costs

Having fewer servers reduces time, effort, and cost for server management. Placing Mitel virtual appliances in the virtual infrastructure with other virtualized business applications provides further cost savings through integrated IT processes.

- Reduced power consumption

Virtual data centers have inherent power savings due to the reduced number of servers.

In VMware deployments, VMware Distributed Power Management (DPM) and the vMotion feature reduce the number of servers running at any given time.

- Improved application availability

VMware offers several high availability features. One example is the VMware High Availability feature, which can monitor server and virtual appliance health. In the case of a host server failure, the virtual appliances can be restarted on a different server, minimizing down time. When server maintenance is necessary, Mitel virtual appliances can be moved to another server using vMotion, avoiding a service outage.

Hyper-V availability features are not supported for Mitel products at this time.

- Integrated business continuity

By consolidating Mitel virtual appliances within the customer's virtual infrastructure, the disaster recovery features provided by VMware will be applied consistently to all of the critical services.

Hyper-V availability features are not supported for Mitel products at this time.

- Seamless telephony integration when using Mitel virtual appliances

Mitel's adoption of virtualization has allowed continued compatibility and the ability to integrate with existing customer network and telephony infrastructure, just as Mitel physical server-based applications such as the 3300 ICP do.

- Faster system deployment

Mitel virtual appliances are inherently simpler to deploy into an existing data center. Increasing communication capacity or adjusting overall workload is easier and faster than the equivalent operations in traditional hardware and dedicated servers.

- Update roll-back

VMware features provide methods to quickly and easily restore a virtual appliance to its exact state before an upgrade, should a problem arise during an application or virtual appliance upgrade. On a physical system, a failed upgrade usually requires rebuilding the system and performing a data restore.

Hyper-V features are not supported for Mitel products at this time.

This Solutions Guide discusses configuration and performance at the general solution level. The planning and configuration guidelines discussed here apply to the deployment of all Mitel virtual products. Product installation and configuration procedures and engineering guidelines are described in the product documentation for each individual product. See the Documentation page on Mitel OnLine.

For more information about designing multi-node Mitel networks, both physical MiVoice Business-based and MiVoice Business Virtual-based, refer to the *Multi-Node Networking Solutions Guide*.

# Software requirements

Microsoft Hyper-V and VMware have specific software requirements, as detailed in the following sections:

- “VMware software requirements” on page 6
- “Hyper-V software requirements” on page 7

## VMware software requirements

Table 1 shows the VMware software product versions supported for use in a Mitel virtualized data center.

Supported VMware vSphere software release

- vSphere Release 6.0 is recommended, including ESXi 6.0, vCenter 6.0, vSphere Client 6.0, and vCloud Director 6.0.
- vSphere Releases 5.1 and 5.5 continue to be supported.
- vSphere Hypervisor 5.5 (ESXi) in standalone mode is supported, but management with vCenter Server is recommended. The VMware vSphere Client, including desktop application or Web Client variants, can also be used. Note that the new features added to vSphere 6.0 are available only in the Web Client.

**Table 1: VMware version support**

| SOFTWARE                                              | VERSIONS SUPPORTED                  | ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VMware vSphere™                                       | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5.x<br>5.1 | vSphere contains vCenter Server, ESXi, and other features.<br>For a full description of vSphere, refer to <a href="http://www.vmware.com/products/datacenter-virtualization/vsphere/overview.html">http://www.vmware.com/products/datacenter-virtualization/vsphere/overview.html</a> |
| VMware vCenter™ Server                                | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5.x<br>5.1 | vCenter is optional.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| VMware vCloud Director                                | 5.5.x                               | See “vCloud Director Support” on page 95.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| VMware ESXi                                           | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5.x<br>5.1 | Plus any available updates<br>Release 5.5+ preferred                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| vCloud Networking and Security (vCNS), including vCNS | 5.1.4.3                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| VMware Site Recovery Manager™                         | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5.x<br>5.1 | See Table 7, “vSphere support by Mitel product - latest release,” on page 22 for application-specific support.                                                                                                                                                                        |



**Table 1: VMware version support**

| SOFTWARE                               | VERSIONS<br>SUPPORTED | ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS                                                      |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VMware Horizon View™                   | 6.x<br>5.3<br>5.2     | Refer to <i>VMware Horizon View Support Solutions Guide</i> on Mitel OnLine. |
| VMware vSphere Storage Appliance (VSA) | 5.5.x<br>5.1          | See "Storage" on page 20.                                                    |
| VSAN                                   | 6.0<br>5.5            |                                                                              |

**Notes:**

1. For a breakdown of the VMware products supported for each of the Mitel virtual appliances, see Table 7.
2. VMware also provides a bundled product collection known as vCloud Suite which contains several of the specific products listed in the table (vSphere, vCloud Networking and Security, vCloud Director, Site Recovery Manager). vCloud Suite also contains several products not listed in the table (vCenter Operations Manager, vCloud Automation Center). See <http://www.vmware.com/products/vCloud-suite>. Specific Mitel support for products in the vCloud Suite lineup are as listed in the table; Mitel support for Suite components not listed should be interpreted either as not specifically supported (no direct integration or verification), or no specific requirement in either direction.

Table 3 shows the Mitel product versions supported for use in a virtualized data center.

## Hyper-V software requirements

Table 2 shows the Hyper-V software product versions required for use in a Mitel virtualized data center.

**Table 2: Hyper-V software requirements**

| SOFTWARE                         | VERSIONS<br>SUPPORTED | ADDITIONAL INFO AND REQUIREMENTS                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows Server with Hyper-V role | 2012 R2               | Refer to <a href="http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh831531.aspx">http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh831531.aspx</a> for details. |
| Hyper-V Server                   | 2012 R2               |                                                                                                                                                       |
| Hyper-V Server                   | 2008<br>2012          | For MiContact Center release 7.1                                                                                                                      |

## Mitel Product version support for VMware and Hyper-V

Table 3 shows the Mitel virtualized product versions supported in VMware and Hyper-V.

**Table 3: Mitel product version support**

| SOFTWARE                                | VMWARE IS SUPPORTED        | HYPER-V IS SUPPORTED       |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>CURRENT RELEASES</b>                 |                            |                            |
| MiVoice Business Virtual                | 8.0                        | 8.0                        |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual          | 9.4                        | 9.4                        |
| MiCollab Virtual                        | 7.3                        | 7.3                        |
| MiCollab Client Virtual                 | 7.3                        | 7.3                        |
| NuPoint Unified Messaging Virtual       | 8.2                        | 8.2                        |
| MiContact Center Office Virtual         | 6.1                        | not supported              |
| MiContact Center Business Virtual       | 8.1 and Service Packs      | 8.1                        |
| MiContact Center Enterprise             | 9.2                        | not supported              |
| MiVoice Call Recording                  | 9.1 and Service Packs      | not supported              |
| Virtual Open Integration Gateway (vOIG) | 4.0                        | not supported              |
| MiVoice Business Express                | 7.3                        | 7.3                        |
| Oria                                    | 5.3 and Service Packs      | not supported              |
| MiCloud Management Gateway              | 5.0                        | not supported              |
| <b>PREVIOUS RELEASES</b>                |                            |                            |
| MiVoice Business Virtual / vMCD         | all releases since 6.0 SP2 | all releases since 7.02    |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual          | all releases since 7.1     | all releases since 8.0 SP1 |
| MiCollab Virtual / vMAS                 | all releases since 5.0     | all releases since 6.0     |
| MiCollab Client Virtual / vUCA          | all releases since 6.0 SP1 | all releases since 6.0 SP4 |
| NuPoint Unified Messaging Virtual       | all releases since 6.0     | all releases since 7.0     |
| MiContact Center Virtual (MiCC Virtual) | all releases since 7.1 SP1 | all releases since 7.1 SP1 |
| Virtual Customer Service Manager (vCSM) | all releases since 6.0     | not supported              |
| Virtual Open Integration Gateway (vOIG) | all releases since 2.0     | not supported              |
| MiContact Center Office Virtual         | all releases since 6.1 SP1 | not supported              |
| Oria                                    | all releases since 5.0     | not supported              |
| MiVoice Call Recording                  | all releases since 8.1 SP1 | not supported              |
| MiVoice Business Express                | all releases since 6.0     | all releases since 7.1     |

**Note:** Refer to the Engineering Guidelines for each product; see [Table 9 on page 33](#).

## Hardware requirements

### VMware hardware requirements:

For the list of processors supported by VMware, refer to <http://www.vmware.com/resources/compatibility/search.php>.

### Hyper-V hardware requirements:

Refer to the Hyper-V 2012 documentation for the hardware requirements: <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dn303418.aspx>.

At minimum, Mitel virtual appliances running on both VMware and Hyper-V virtual machines require:

- Currently shipping Intel Xeon E3v2 / E5 / E7 Server Class series processors with a minimum of 4 cores, 2 GHz, Hyper-threading enabled, and Extended Page Table support (<http://ark.intel.com/>)
- Legacy server technology may also be used but must meet the minimum requirements shown in Table 4:

**Table 4: Minimum hardware requirements**

| HARDWARE SUPPLIER | PROCESSOR SERIES REQUIRED        | ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Intel             | Xeon® 55xx/56xx/65xx/75xx Series | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2.26 GHz or better, with a minimum of 4 cores</li> <li>• Hyper-Threading must be enabled in the BIOS (in some cases, this may be called Logical Processor)</li> <li>• Intel VT<sup>1</sup> must be enabled in the BIOS</li> <li>• must use EPT (Extended Page Tables)</li> </ul> |
| AMD               | Opteron™ 2400 Series             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2.4 GHz or better with 6 cores</li> <li>• including Rapid Virtualization Indexing technology</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                   | Opteron 3200, 4200, 6200 Series  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supported for vSphere 5.0+</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

### Notes:

1. Intel VT consists of Intel VT-x in the processor, Intel VT-d in the I/O chip set, and Intel VT-c in the network adapter chip set. The Intel Xeon 5500 Series incorporates Intel VT as do many newer Intel processors. Refer to <http://ark.intel.com/VTList.aspx>.
2. Refer to the Release Notes for the Mitel product version you are using for an up-to-date list of supported processors.
3. Some processors allow selection of power management modes in BIOS settings (Low Power vs. High Performance, for example). It is recommended that hosts used to support real-time sensitive applications such as MiVoice Business, NuPoint UM, MiVoice Border Gateway and so on, have their BIOS setting configured to maximize performance. This reduces the risk of voice quality issues and missed interrupts, for example.

# Documentation and Resources

Table 5 lists additional resources and documentation. Mitel documentation is available on Mitel OnLine.

**Table 5: Documentation and resources**

| CONTENT                                                                                      | DOCUMENT OR LOCATION                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Detailed MiVoice Business Virtual engineering information                                    | <i>MiVoice Business Engineering Guidelines for Industry Standard Servers and MiVoice Business Virtual</i>                                                       |
| MiVoice Business Virtual installation and administration                                     | <i>MiVoice Business Installation and Administration Guide for MiVoice Business Virtual</i>                                                                      |
| MiVoice Business Virtual known issues                                                        | <i>Mitel Virtual Appliance Quick Reference Guide</i>                                                                                                            |
| MiVoice Business Express                                                                     | <i>MiVoice Business Express Deployment Guide</i>                                                                                                                |
| MiCollab installation and administration                                                     | <i>MiCollab Installation and Maintenance Guide</i>                                                                                                              |
| MiCollab Client administration                                                               | <i>MiCollab Client Administrator's Guide</i>                                                                                                                    |
| MiCollab Audio, Web, and Video Virtual administration and maintenance                        | <i>MiCollab Audio, Web, and Video Configuration and Maintenance Manual</i>                                                                                      |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual installation and maintenance                                  | <i>MiVoice Border Gateway Installation and Maintenance Guide</i>                                                                                                |
| MiContact Center Office                                                                      | <i>MiContact Center Office Technician's Guide</i>                                                                                                               |
| MiContact Center Business                                                                    | <i>MiContact Center Business Deployment Guide</i>                                                                                                               |
| Oria deployment                                                                              | <i>Oria Installation and Maintenance Guide</i><br><i>Oria Engineering Guidelines</i>                                                                            |
| The main VMware documentation Web page                                                       | <a href="http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/">http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/</a>                                                                           |
| The main VMware vSphere 5.5 Web page, with links to documentation, videos, and release notes | <a href="http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/vsphere-esxi-vcenter-server-pubs.html">http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/vsphere-esxi-vcenter-server-pubs.html</a> |
| The VMware Hardware Compatibility guide                                                      | <a href="http://www.vmware.com/resources/compatibility/search.php">http://www.vmware.com/resources/compatibility/search.php</a>                                 |
| vSphere resource management                                                                  | <i>VMware vSphere Resource Management Guide</i>                                                                                                                 |
| vSphere performance best practices                                                           | <i>Performance Best Practices for VMware vSphere</i>                                                                                                            |
| VMware Horizon View support in Mitel virtual appliances                                      | <i>VMware Horizon View Support Solutions Guide</i>                                                                                                              |
| Microsoft Hyper-V documentation                                                              | Microsoft Technet Library                                                                                                                                       |

# Chapter 2

## DEPLOYING ON A VMWARE INFRASTRUCTURE



## Deploying Mitel virtual applications on a VMware virtual infrastructure

This chapter describes VMware deployment considerations specific to introducing Mitel virtual appliances and virtualized applications into your IT infrastructure, including:

- “Deploying Mitel virtual applications on a VMware virtual infrastructure” on page 13
- “Architecture and topology of Mitel virtual solutions” on page 14
- “Deployment considerations” on page 16
- “Supported VMware features” on page 34
- “Resiliency, high availability, and disaster recovery” on page 36

# Architecture and topology of Mitel virtual solutions

Figure 1 shows the Mitel virtual appliances on the VMware infrastructure, distributed on hardware servers. Mitel virtual applications deliver capital cost savings associated with the reduction in server hardware and real estate; operational savings related to the reduction in power and server provisioning costs; and productivity improvements and resource efficiencies in data center management and risk mitigation. Additionally, use of VMware availability features enable even higher levels of solution resiliency, business continuity and disaster recovery.

With virtualized voice, rather than having to handle voice communications with a separate budget and separate sets of hardware, processes, tools, and often staff, voice can be treated like any other business application in the data center. Rather than managing boxes, IT managers can manage the overall services that IT provides to the business, and in the process, reap the benefits and cost savings of a simplified test, development, and production cycle, streamlined administration, and a single disaster recovery and business continuity plan that applies to the whole data center.



IP1595

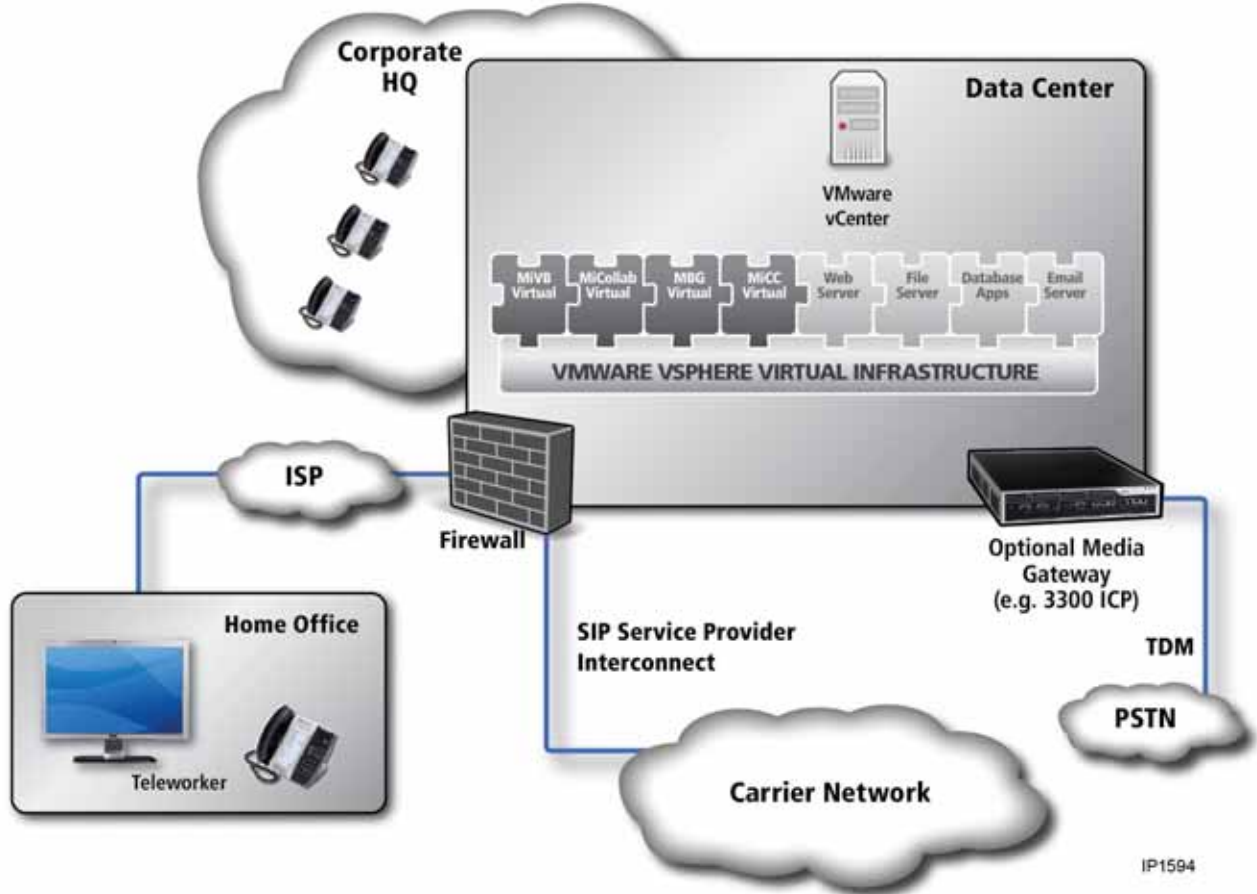
**Figure 1: Mitel virtual applications on VMware Infrastructure**

Mitel virtual appliances are bundled with Mitel Standard Linux (MSL) and packaged in Open Virtualization Format (OVF) for deployment in a VMware environment. Mitel virtual applications are delivered as OVA (.ova) files, ready to import into a VMware ESXi Hypervisor.

Given the potential complexity of your solution, and the time-sensitivity of the functions, it is important that the systems be configured to:

- Ensure that the Mitel products work optimally with each other and with your existing infrastructure.
- Ensure that the overall solution is optimized for use with the virtual (VMware) infrastructure.
- Ensure that the VMware servers have the capacity to deliver the standard of service you need.
- Increase the availability of your services and applications.





**Figure 2: MiVoice Business Virtual application layer resiliency with vSphere High Availability**

This scenario consists of a Mitel Voice Over IP (VOIP) and Unified Communications (UC) virtual solution in a single data center, similar to the previous scenario. This scenario adds MiVoice Business Virtual controllers for application layer resiliency that ensures immediate voice recovery, and VMware High Availability (HA) to provide rapid recovery and return to the primary MiVoice Business Virtual, in the event the host or virtual machine fails.

MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual application layer resiliency (clustering) ensures immediate availability of voice connectivity to the service provider. A failed MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual recovers using HA, restoring full service quickly.

The resumption of voice connectivity occurs in preference to data network connectivity: SIP and PRI connectivity. In this example, PRI is the front-end to the virtual appliances with a physical Mitel 3300 ICP acting as the media gateway and connection to each of the data centers.

# Deployment considerations

The following considerations will affect the design of your deployment:

- “Deployment types” on page 16
- “Preparing the VMware infrastructure” on page 17
- “VMware vSphere support by Mitel product release” on page 20
- “Host server sizing and resource management considerations” on page 21

## Deployment types

There are three primary deployment types used for the installation of Mitel virtual applications:

- Small and Medium-size Business (SMB)

SMB deployments of virtual applications are usually used in smaller businesses, for server consolidation. Management is generally not the primary issue, but running Mitel Unified Communication and Collaboration (UCC) applications on VMware virtual servers offers cost savings because fewer servers are required.

An SMB deployment is likely to have a small number of host servers, and possibly just a single stand-alone host. vCenter Server-related functions such as vMotion and HA virtualized environment availability features may not be present. Mitel applications generally coexist with non-Mitel applications in SMB environments.

- Enterprise

Enterprise-level deployments are used either to fit the Mitel system into the existing virtual IT infrastructure, or to create a new virtual IT infrastructure specifically dedicated to Enterprise UCC functions.

An Enterprise-level deployment allows, and generally requires, the addition of VMware vCenter Server-based management, along with related functions such as vMotion and HA. Mitel virtual applications usually run on a subset of the available servers, to allow space for vMotion, HA, DRS, and DPM operations, for example, as required for the installation.

Enterprise deployments may be characterized as Private Cloud, effectively a hosted model, operated by Enterprise IT, using one of the deployment models discussed below.

- Hosted

Rather than setting up a Mitel network on your premises with Mitel hardware and software, you can have your UCC and other applications hosted in a Service Provider data center, in a Public Cloud, for a monthly hosting charge or similar billing arrangement, using one of the deployment models discussed below.

This environment is likely to be a large-scale cloud cluster in which you lease capacity to run your virtual applications. Sophisticated management, including vCenter Server and related operations, are usually present, but not directly accessible by the customer.

The Mitel virtual UCC solutions are well-suited to the following deployment models:

- **Software as a Service (SaaS)** - Service Providers or Enterprise IT host the Mitel UCC solution as a set of software applications within a VMware vSphere shared server infrastructure, and offer it to customers as a service. There may also be other non-Mitel applications offered as part of the overall service. Customers, in this context, may be individual end-customers, Mitel resellers managing the UCC and other applications on behalf of the end-customer, or Enterprise IT (Private Cloud) providing service to organizations within the enterprise.
- **Unified Communications as a Service (UCaaS)** - Similar to SaaS, Service Providers or the Enterprise IT host the Mitel UCC solution as a set of applications within a VMware vSphere shared server infrastructure, and offer UCC service to customers. Customers may be individual end-customers, Mitel resellers managing the UCC applications on behalf of the end-customers, or Enterprise IT (Private Cloud) providing service to organizations within the enterprise.
- **Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS)** - Infrastructure providers lease out computing and network resources (for example: vCPU, GHz, RAM, HDD, and network access) required to host the Mitel UCC solution on their VMware vSphere shared infrastructure. The end customer, or a Mitel reseller acting on their behalf, must handle all aspects of installation, administration, management and maintenance of the UCC applications.
- **Customer Premise Equipment** - Mitel certified dealers or customers install and configure Mitel UCC virtual applications in the VMware environment on the customer's premise. The virtual infrastructure is directly managed by the customer. This is primarily suited to Enterprise and SMB type deployments.

## Preparing the VMware infrastructure

Regardless of the deployment environment, it is important that the overall VMware infrastructure is correctly configured to guarantee the highest level of availability and performance.

### Host servers and clustering

When deciding on the host server computing environment, and planning how to set up one or more clusters of virtual machines, consider the following:

- Plan for adequate overall computing capacity across the cluster of host servers to accommodate immediate and foreseeable future needs for overall CPU and memory. This should include availability plans, if one or more hosts fail. See [“Host server sizing and resource management considerations”](#) on page 21.
- Plan to deploy on multiple hosts of similar capacity and compatible processor type within each cluster so that you can enable Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS), vMotion, High Availability (HA), Distributed Power Management (DPM), and other VMware availability and optimization features.



**Note:** Mitel expects vMotion and Storage vMotion to function properly with Mitel virtual appliances in accordance with supported configuration from VMware. Similarly, SAN, VMware Virtual SAN (vSAN), and other storage connectivity is expected to work in VMware-supported configurations, subject to the I/O requirements listed in [Table 8](#). Refer to Mitel application-specific Engineering Guidelines documentation ([Table 9](#)) for vMotion host and storage performance requirements. If you want to use vMotion in a configuration that may be outside these specifications, contact Mitel Professional Services for assistance.

- Configure hosts into clusters, with VMware Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS) enabled. DRS continuously monitors utilization across a resource pool, and allocates available resources among virtual machines according to business needs. See [“Resiliency, high availability, and disaster recovery” on page 36](#) for more information about DRS.
- Ensure that all hosts that will be used to support real-time sensitive applications, such as MiVoice Business Virtual, NuPoint UM Virtual, MBG Virtual, and so on, are configured for maximum performance. This includes processor and BIOS settings requirements as listed in [“Minimum hardware requirements” on page 9](#).

### Networking

Follow VMware best practices for configuration of networking capacity and fault tolerance. Mitel recommends the following minimum guidelines:

- Supply plenty of bandwidth: 1 Gbit/s across each of at least four physical ports on each host server is considered the minimum for most deployments.
- Separate the Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) and IP interfaces for storage traffic (assuming Storage Area Network (SAN), VMware Virtual SAN (vSAN), Network File System (NFS), or similar IP storage is used) on a separate VLAN or subnet. This provides adequate throughput for storage operations, while isolating traffic from other flows. Preferably, as per VMware best practices, you should support storage networking on two or more physical ports on the host servers, directed at different network switches to provide resiliency. You should also consider configuring these ports for NIC bonding (using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) or similar) to improve overall throughput and/or resiliency.
- If VMware vMotion features such as Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS) and High Availability (HA) will be used, separate VLAN, IP interface, and multiple physical ports should be used for vMotion traffic.
- Voice traffic to and from the Mitel virtual appliances should be separate from data traffic. Implement a dedicated voice VLAN, and support it through multiple physical ports. The same recommendation applies for physical implementations.

### Storage

In planning connections to, and stability of, the network storage, consider the following guidelines:

- For networked storage, ensure a robust Storage Network to support storage network traffic with minimal network delays.

- Ensure adequate throughput and IOPS to support all hosted applications in the storage device. Refer to the following documentation for detailed requirements.
  - “VMware vSphere storage setup guidelines for Mitel virtual appliances” on page 193
  - Product-specific documentation, for detailed requirements
  - VMware documentation for storage set-up. VMware Publication: *vSphere Storage* (for version number)
- Deploy with support for replication, including remote replication if you plan to implement Site Recovery Manager (SRM), or a similar disaster recovery scheme.
- Deploy storage with multi-pathing, with a minimum of two physical ports on each host server and on each of the storage units, directed at different network switches. This provides resiliency.
- RAID protection of all storage is strongly recommended.

Mitel virtual appliances support for various storage architectures matches that of VMware vSphere, unless specifically stated otherwise. This includes iSCSI, NFS, Fibre Channel, VSAN, VSA (VMware and other vendors), and host-local storage. Host-local storage has a major limitation in that the virtual application cannot be moved to a different host server using vMotion for load balancing or maintenance, or protected by HA. For details, refer to the Mitel documentation for each virtual appliance, available at Mitel OnLine.



**Note:** Regardless of the storage technology used, ensure that the storage used by Mitel applications meets or exceeds the specific requirements of the applications involved, in terms of IOPS. See Table 8, “VMware required resource reservation and allocation,” on page 22, and application-specific Engineering Guidelines.

In addition to Network Storage, Mitel supports on-board server storage that can be enabled with VMware vSphere Storage Appliance (VSA), and is ideal for smaller businesses that have a small data center and do not want to invest in expensive off-board network storage solutions. VSA allows for support of HA, DRS, and DPM with on-board server storage for up to three servers. (The three-host limit is imposed by the VMware implementation of VSA, as of vSphere 5.1.) vMCD Release 6.0 and MiVoice Business Virtual Release 7.0 support VSA.



**Note:** VMware VSA may be lower performance than hardware-based high performance shared storage. If VMware VSA is to be used, ensure that VSA can meet the performance requirements of the applications using this as storage.

### *Virtual SAN (vSAN)*

vSAN is a new storage solution from VMware that is fully integrated with vSphere. It automatically aggregates server disks in a cluster to create shared storage that can be rapidly provisioned from VMware vCenter during VM creation. It is an object-based storage system and a platform for VM Storage Policies designed to simplify virtual machine storage placement decisions for vSphere administrators. It is fully integrated with core vSphere features such as VMware vSphere High Availability (vSphere HA), VMware vSphere Distributed Resource Scheduler™ (vSphere DRS) and VMware vSphere vMotion®.

Its goal is to provide both high availability and scale-out storage functionality. It can also be considered in the context of quality of service (QoS) because VM Storage Policies can be

created that define the level of performance and availability required on a per-virtual machine basis.

VMware recommends a 10 GbE network for this feature.

**Table 6: Comparing VSA and vSAN**

| ATTRIBUTES           | VSPHERE STORAGE APPLIANCE (VSA)                                                                                                           | VIRTUAL SAN (VSAN)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Description</b>   | Low cost, simple shared storage for small deployments.                                                                                    | Scalable, distributed storage designed for virtualized and cloud environments.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Form Factor</b>   | Virtual appliance                                                                                                                         | Built-in vSphere kernel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Ideal targets</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Small SMB</li> <li>• Remote Office/Branch Office (ROBO) deployments</li> </ul>                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enterprise</li> <li>• Commercial</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Scalability</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2-3 vSphere servers</li> <li>• Does not scale beyond three hosts maximum</li> </ul>              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimum of three hosts in deployment</li> <li>• Scalable to vSphere cluster size</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Performance</b>   | No Solid State Drive (SSD) - low performance                                                                                              | Solid State Drive (SSD) caching - high performance                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Functionality</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Simple to install and configure</li> <li>• Scales up to about 16 TB of usable storage</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• vCenter-integrated management</li> <li>• SSD caching and intelligent data placement</li> <li>• Rapid storage provisioning</li> <li>• Scaling for large deployments</li> <li>• Granular scaling</li> <li>• Policy-based management</li> </ul> |

## VMware vSphere support by Mitel product release

Table 1, “VMware version support,” on page 6 shows the vSphere releases that are supported by the various Mitel virtual appliances. In Table 7, support is broken down by Mitel product, to help in detailed planning.

**Table 7: vSphere support by Mitel product - latest release**

|                                  | VSPHERE<br>(ESXI)          | VCENTER<br>SERVER          | SITE<br>RECOVERY<br>MANAGER | HORIZON<br>VIEW | V-CLOUD<br>DIRECTOR | VCNS<br>(VSHIELD<br>EDGE) |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| MiVoice Business<br>Release 8.0+ | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5  | 6.1<br>5.3      | 5.5                 | 5.1                       |
| MiCollab<br>Release 7.3+         | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5  | 6.1<br>5.3      | 5.5                 | 5.1                       |
| MiCollab Client<br>Release 7.3+  | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5  | 6.1<br>5.3      | 5.5                 | 5.1                       |

**Table 7: vSphere support by Mitel product - latest release**

|                                                   | VSPHERE<br>(ESXI)          | VCENTER<br>SERVER          | SITE<br>RECOVERY<br>MANAGER | HORIZON<br>VIEW   | VCLOUD<br>DIRECTOR | VCNS<br>(VSHIELD<br>EDGE) |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| NuPoint UM Virtual<br>Release 8.3+                | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5  | 6.1<br>5.3<br>5.2 | 5.5<br>5.1         | 5.1                       |
| MiVoice Border<br>Gateway Virtual<br>Release 9.4+ | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5  | 6.1<br>5.3        | 5.5<br>5.1         | 5.1                       |
| MiContact Center<br>Office<br>Release 8.1+        | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | not<br>supported            | not<br>supported  | not<br>supported   | not<br>supported          |
| Oria Virtual<br>Release 5.3+                      | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | not<br>supported            | not<br>supported  | not<br>supported   | not<br>supported          |
| MiCloud Management<br>Gateway<br>Release 5.0      | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | 6.0 Update 2<br>6.0<br>5.5 | not<br>supported            | 6.1<br>5.3<br>5.2 | 5.5<br>5.1         | 5.5<br>5.1                |

**Notes:**

1. MCDs and vMCDs using MCD clustering and IP Trunks are not supported in SRM for versions earlier than MiVoice Business Virtual Release 7.0; only SIP trunks and standalone vMCDs can be supported.  
A deployment configuration has been tested with MiVoice Business Virtual that uses resiliency along with SRM, and so this is supported for MiVoice Business Virtual Release 7.0 and later.
2. After SRM recovery—that is, after the system becomes active on the recovery site—you must configure and test SRM at the recovery site to ensure the ability to move back to the original site or other alternate site. Then you can use SRM to move the system back to the original site.



**Note:** For detailed information about Mitel products and VMware Horizon View, refer to the *VMware Horizon View Support Solutions Guide* on Mitel OnLine.

## Host server sizing and resource management considerations

When setting up your environment in preparation for deployment of Mitel virtual appliances, you must consider host sizing and resource management.

Table 8 shows the resource allocation and resource reservation requirements for each of the Mitel virtual appliances.

Refer to the Engineering Guidelines for each product for more detailed information about deployment of the virtual version.

Table 8: VMware required resource reservation and allocation

| VIRTUAL APPLIANCE                          | RE-LEASE        | SYSTEM CAPACITY                  | CONFIGURATION |          | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |         | EXPECTED MAXIMUM USAGE |             |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|---------------|----------|-----------------------|---------|------------------------|-------------|
|                                            |                 |                                  | VCPU          | DISK     | CPU                   | MEMORY  | NETWORK I/O            | STORAGE I/O |
| ESXi <sup>1,5</sup>                        | 6.0<br>5.1, 5.5 |                                  | 1             |          | 2 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  |                        |             |
| <b>CURRENT RELEASES</b>                    |                 |                                  |               |          |                       |         |                        |             |
| MiVoice Business Virtual <sup>3</sup>      | 8.0             | 250 devices <sup>4</sup>         | 2             | 20 GB    | 2 GHz                 | 1.5 GB  | 25 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                            |                 | 1500 devices <sup>4</sup>        | 3             | 20 GB    | 3 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  | 25 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                            |                 | 2500 devices <sup>4</sup>        | 4             | 20 GB    | 5 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  | 50 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                            |                 | 5000 devices <sup>4</sup>        | 6             | 20 GB    | 8 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  | 100 MB/s               | 56 IOPS     |
|                                            |                 | Embedded Voice Mail <sup>2</sup> |               | included |                       |         | 2 MB/s                 | 24 IOPS     |
| MiCollab Virtual Multi-App <sup>3</sup>    | 7.3             | 250 users <sup>4</sup>           | 2             | 50 GB    | 2 GHz                 | 5.0 GB  | 1.5 MB/s               | 85 IOPS     |
|                                            |                 | 1500 users <sup>4</sup>          | 4             | 90 GB    | 6 GHz                 | 7.0 GB  | 5 MB/s                 | 100 IOPS    |
|                                            |                 | 2500 users                       | 6             | 120 GB   | 9 GHz                 | 8.0 GB  | 6 MB/s                 | 150 IOPS    |
|                                            |                 | 5000 users                       | 8             | 120 GB   | 12 GHz                | 16 GB   | 8 MB/s                 | 200 IOPS    |
| <b>MiCollab Virtual Single-App</b>         | 7.3             | 5000 users                       |               |          |                       |         |                        |             |
| Audio Web Video Conference (in MiCollab)   | 6.3             | 500 Ports                        | 8             | 120 GB   | 6 GHz                 | 16.0 GB | 5 MB/s                 | 120 IOPS    |
| MiCollab Client (in MiCollab)              | 7.3             | 5000 Users                       | 8             | 120 GB   | 8 GHz                 | 16.0 GB | 1 MB/s                 | 200 IOPS    |
| NuPoint UM (in MiCollab)                   | 8.3             | 120 Ports                        | 8             | 120 GB   | 5 GHz                 | 16.0 GB | 1.6 MB/s               | 80 IOPS     |
| MiCollab Multi Tenant                      | 7.3             | 7,500 users, 250 tenants         | 8             | 120 GB   | 12.5 GHz              | 16.0 GB | 2.8 MB/s               | 200 IOPS    |
| NuPoint UM Virtual Standalone <sup>3</sup> | 8.3             | 60 ports                         | 2             | 130 GB   | 2 GHz                 | 4.0 GB  | 0.6 MB/s               | 39 IOPS     |
|                                            |                 | 120 ports                        | 4             | 260 GB   | 4 GHz                 | 6.0 GB  | 1.6 MB/s               | 80 IOPS     |
|                                            |                 | 240 ports                        | 8             | 520 GB   | 8 GHz                 | 8.0 GB  | 3 MB/s                 | 98 IOPS     |
| MiCollab Client Virtual Standalone         | 7.3             | 250 users                        | 2             | 40 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 5.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                            |                 | 1500                             | 4             | 40 GB    | 1.5 GHz               | 7.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                            |                 | 2500                             | 6             | 120 GB   | 3 GHz                 | 8.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                            |                 | 5000 users                       | 6             | 120 GB   | 3.5 GHz               | 10.0 GB | 1.5 MB/s               | 200 IOPS    |



**Table 8: VMware required resource reservation and allocation**

| VIRTUAL APPLIANCE                           | RE-LEASE      | SYSTEM CAPACITY                               | CONFIGURATION |                         | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |                     | EXPECTED MAXIMUM USAGE |                       |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
|                                             |               |                                               | VCPU          | DISK                    | CPU                   | MEMORY              | NETWORK I/O            | STORAGE I/O           |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual <sup>3</sup> | 9.4           | 250 users <sup>13</sup>                       | 1             | 20 GB                   | 1 GHz                 | 1.0 GB              | 1.7 MB/s               | 4 IOPS                |
|                                             |               | SIP trunk only                                | 1             | 20 GB                   | 1 GHz                 | 1.0 GB              | 1.7 MB/s               | 4 IOPS                |
|                                             |               | 200 SIP channels                              |               |                         |                       |                     |                        |                       |
|                                             |               | 2500 users <sup>13</sup>                      | 3             | 40 GB                   | 5 GHz                 | 2.0 GB              | 5 MB/s                 | 27 IOPS               |
|                                             |               | SIP trunk only                                | 3             | 40 GB                   | 4.5 GHz               | 2.0 GB              | 5 MB/s                 | 27 IOPS               |
|                                             |               | 500 SIP channels                              |               |                         |                       |                     |                        |                       |
| MiContact Center Office Virtual             | 6.2           | Entry level <sup>8</sup>                      | 2             | 40 GB                   | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 2.0 GB <sup>9</sup> | 2.7 MB/s               | 17 IOPS               |
|                                             |               | Mid-range <sup>8</sup>                        | 2             | 100 GB                  | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 4.0 GB <sup>9</sup> | 3 MB/s                 | 46 IOPS               |
|                                             |               | Enterprise <sup>8</sup>                       | 2             | 200 GB                  | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 4.0 GB <sup>9</sup> | 3 MB/s                 | 46 IOPS               |
| MiContact Center Business                   | 8.1 SPx, 8.1  | Enterprise                                    | 8             | 120 GB                  | 12.5 GHz              | 16 GB               | 0.9 MB/s               |                       |
| MiCC Remote IVR                             | 8.1 SPx, 8.1  | Enterprise                                    | 4             | 60 GB                   | 1.5 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 0.7 MB/s               |                       |
| MiContact Center Multi Tenant               | 8.1 SPx, 8.1  | 50 resilient tenants<br>(25 local, 25 remote) | 8             | 120 GB                  | 9.5 GHz               | 16 GB               | 8.6 MB/s               | 198 IOPS              |
| MiCC Multi Tenant Remote IVR                | 8.1 SPx, 8.1  | 25 resilient tenants                          | 4             | 60 GB                   | 5.0 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 4.4 MB/s               | 62 IOPS               |
| MiContact Center Enterprise                 | 9.2           | MiCC Enterprise Server                        | 4             | 200 GB                  | 1.0 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 0.1 MB/s               | 5 IOPS                |
|                                             |               | 3000 agents                                   |               |                         |                       |                     |                        |                       |
|                                             |               | OAS Server                                    | 4             | 80 GB                   | 3.0 GHz               | 4.0 GB              | 0.1 MB/s               | 15 IOPS               |
|                                             |               | DB Server                                     | 4             | 200 GB                  | 2.5 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 0.2 MB/s               | 15 IOPS               |
| MiVoice Business Express <sup>14</sup>      | 7.3           | 250 users                                     | 2             | 40 GB                   | 2.5 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 2.0 MB/s               | 95 IOPS <sup>18</sup> |
|                                             |               | 500 users                                     | 4             | 80 GB                   | 5 GHz                 | 8.0 GB              | 4.0 MB/s               | 120 IOPS              |
| LBG <sup>6,12</sup>                         | 3.5, 3.4, 3.3 | 2500 users                                    | 1             | 40 GB                   | 1 GHz                 | 1.0 GB              |                        |                       |
|                                             |               | 10,000 users                                  | 2             | 40 GB                   | 2 GHz                 | 2.0 GB              |                        |                       |
| MiVoice Enterprise Manager <sup>6</sup>     | 9.0           | 50 nodes                                      | 4             | 45-165 GB <sup>11</sup> | 3 GHz                 | 1.0-2.0 GB          |                        |                       |

**Table 8: VMware required resource reservation and allocation**

| VIRTUAL APPLIANCE                       | RE-LEASE         | SYSTEM CAPACITY                                         | CONFIGURATION |          | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |        | EXPECTED MAXIMUM USAGE |             |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|-----------------------|--------|------------------------|-------------|
|                                         |                  |                                                         | VCPU          | DISK     | CPU                   | MEMORY | NETWORK I/O            | STORAGE I/O |
| Oria Virtual                            | 5.3 SP1, 5.3     | 1k customers, 100k users, 5k users/customer             | 4             | 50 GB    | 4 GHz                 | 8 GB   | 0.4 MB/s               | 26 IOPS     |
| MiVoice Call Recording                  | 9.1 SP1, 9.1     | 25 ports                                                | 2             | 100 GB   | 2 GHz                 | 2 GB   |                        |             |
|                                         |                  | 50 ports                                                | 3             | 100 GB   | 3 GHz                 | 2 GB   |                        |             |
|                                         |                  | 750 ports                                               | 12            | 100 GB   | 12 GHz                | 8 GB   |                        |             |
| Open Integration Gateway Virtual        | 4.0              | 1500 apps<br>Up to 100 networked MiVoice Business       | 2             | 20 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 4 GB   | 0.8 MB/s               | 40 IOPS     |
|                                         |                  | 500 apps<br>Up to 250 stand-alone MiVoice Business      | 2             | 20 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 4 GB   | 0.8 MB/s               | 40 IOPS     |
| MiCloud Management Gateway              | 5.0              | Up to 100 customers/<br>VLANs<br>Up to 1000 connections | 1             | 10 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 1 GB   |                        |             |
| MiVoice Office 250 PS-1                 | 6.2 SP1          | 250 users                                               | 1             | 80 GB    | 0,5 GHz               | 1 GB   |                        |             |
| <b>PREVIOUS RELEASES</b>                |                  |                                                         |               |          |                       |        |                        |             |
| MiVoice Business Virtual <sup>3</sup>   | 7.2+<br>7.1, 7.0 | 250 devices <sup>4</sup>                                | 2             | 20 GB    | 2 GHz                 | 1.5 GB | 25 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                         |                  | 1500 devices <sup>4</sup>                               | 3             | 20 GB    | 3 GHz                 | 2.0 GB | 25 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                         |                  | 2500 devices <sup>4</sup>                               | 4             | 20 GB    | 5 GHz                 | 2.0 GB | 50 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                         |                  | 5000 devices <sup>4</sup>                               | 6             | 20 GB    | 8 GHz                 | 2.0 GB | 100 MB/s               | 56 IOPS     |
|                                         |                  | Embedded Voice Mail <sup>2</sup>                        |               | included |                       |        | 2 MB/s                 | 24 IOPS     |
| MiCollab Virtual Multi-App <sup>3</sup> | 7.2+<br>7.1, 7.0 | 250 users <sup>4</sup>                                  | 2             | 50 GB    | 2 GHz                 | 5.0 GB | 1.5 MB/s               | 85 IOPS     |
|                                         |                  | 1500 users <sup>4</sup>                                 | 4             | 90 GB    | 6 GHz                 | 7.0 GB | 5 MB/s                 | 100 IOPS    |
|                                         |                  | 2500 users                                              | 6             | 120 GB   | 9 GHz                 | 8.0 GB | 6 MB/s                 | 150 IOPS    |
|                                         |                  | 5000 users                                              | 8             | 120 GB   | 12 GHz                | 16 GB  | 8 MB/s                 | 200 IOPS    |
| MiCollab Virtual Single-App             | 7.2+<br>7.1, 7.0 | 5000 users                                              | 6.0           |          |                       |        |                        |             |

**Table 8: VMware required resource reservation and allocation**

| VIRTUAL APPLIANCE                           | RE-LEASE               | SYSTEM CAPACITY                    | CONFIGURATION |          | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |         | EXPECTED MAXIMUM USAGE |             |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------|----------|-----------------------|---------|------------------------|-------------|
|                                             |                        |                                    | VCPU          | DISK     | CPU                   | MEMORY  | NETWORK I/O            | STORAGE I/O |
| Audio Web Video Conference (in MiCollab)    | 6. 2+, 6.1, 6.0        | 500 Ports                          | 8             | 120 GB   | 6 GHz                 | 16.0 GB | 5 MB/s                 | 120 IOPS    |
| MiCollab Client (in MiCollab)               | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0         | 5000 Users                         | 8             | 120 GB   | 8 GHz                 | 16.0 GB | 1 MB/s                 | 79 IOPS     |
| NuPoint UM (in MiCollab)                    | 8.2+, 8.1, 8.0         | 120 Ports                          | 8             | 120 GB   | 5 GHz                 | 16.0 GB | 1.6 MB/s               | 45 IOPS     |
| vMCD <sup>3</sup>                           | 6.0                    | 150 users <sup>4</sup>             | 2             | 20 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 1.5 GB  | 25 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                             | 6.0 SP1                | 1500 users <sup>4</sup>            | 3             | 20 GB    | 3 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                             | 6.0 SP2                | 2500 users <sup>4</sup>            | 4             | 20 GB    | 5 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  | 50 MB/s                | 28 IOPS     |
|                                             |                        | Embedded Voice Mail <sup>2</sup>   |               | included |                       |         | 2 MB/s                 | 24 IOPS     |
| MiCollab Virtual Multi-App <sup>3</sup>     | 7.2, 7.1, 6.0          | 250 users <sup>4</sup>             | 2             | 40 GB    | 2 GHz                 | 5.0 GB  | 1.7 MB/s               | 44 IOPS     |
|                                             |                        | 1500 users <sup>4</sup>            | 4             | 80 GB    | 6 GHz                 | 7.0 GB  | 5 MB/s                 | 91 IOPS     |
|                                             | 6.0 SP1                | 3000 users                         | 8             | 120 GB   | 9 GHz                 | 8.0 GB  | 8 MB/s                 | 190 IOPS    |
| NuPoint UM Virtual Standalone <sup>3</sup>  | 8.2+, 8.1, 8.0, 7.0    | 60 ports                           | 2             | 130 GB   | 2 GHz                 | 4.0 GB  | 0.6 MB/s               | 39 IOPS     |
|                                             |                        | 120 ports                          | 4             | 260 GB   | 4 GHz                 | 6.0 GB  | 1.6 MB/s               | 45 IOPS     |
|                                             |                        | 240 ports                          | 8             | 520 GB   | 8 GHz                 | 8.0 GB  | 3 MB/s                 | 98 IOPS     |
| vNuPoint UM                                 | 6.0 SP1                | 60 users                           | 2             | 130 GB   | 2 GHz                 | 4 GB    |                        |             |
|                                             | 6.0                    | 120 users                          | 4             | 250 GB   | 4 GHz                 | 6.0 GB  |                        |             |
| MiCollab Client Virtual Standalone          | 7.2 SP1                | 250 users                          | 2             | 40 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 5.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                             |                        | 1500                               | 4             | 40 GB    | 1.5 GHz               | 7.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                             |                        | 2500                               | 6             | 120 GB   | 3 GHz                 | 8.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                             |                        | 5000 users                         | 6             | 120 GB   | 3.5 GHz               | 10.0 GB | 1 MB/s                 | 79 IOPS     |
| MiCollab Client Virtual Standalone          | 7.1, 7.0, 6.0 SP3      | 5000 users                         | 6             | 120 GB   | 8 GHz                 | 16.0 GB | 1 MB/s                 | 79 IOPS     |
| vUCA                                        | 6.0 SP1                |                                    | 2             | 30 GB    | 2 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  |                        |             |
|                                             | 6.0, 5.0               |                                    |               |          |                       |         |                        |             |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual <sup>3</sup> | 9.3, 9.2, 9.1, 8.1 SP1 | 250 users <sup>13</sup>            | 1             | 20 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 1.0 GB  | 1.7 MB/s               | 4 IOPS      |
|                                             |                        | 2500 users <sup>13</sup>           | 3             | 40 GB    | 5 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  | 5 MB/s                 | 27 IOPS     |
|                                             | 9.1                    | SIP trunk only<br>200 SIP channels | 1             | 20 GB    | 1 GHz                 | 1.0 GB  |                        |             |

**Table 8: VMware required resource reservation and allocation**

| VIRTUAL APPLIANCE                              | RE-LEASE        | SYSTEM CAPACITY                                    | CONFIGURATION |        | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |                     | EXPECTED MAXIMUM USAGE |             |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-------------|
|                                                |                 |                                                    | VCPU          | DISK   | CPU                   | MEMORY              | NETWORK I/O            | STORAGE I/O |
| vMBG <sup>3</sup>                              | 8.0, 7.1.7.0    | 150 users <sup>13</sup>                            | 1             | 20 GB  | 1 GHz                 | 1.0 GB              |                        |             |
|                                                |                 | 2500 users <sup>13</sup>                           | 3             | 40 GB  | 5 GHz                 | 2.0 GB              |                        |             |
| vCSM                                           | 6.0             | Entry level <sup>8</sup>                           | 2             | 40 GB  | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 2.0 GB <sup>9</sup> |                        |             |
|                                                |                 | Mid-range <sup>8</sup>                             | 2             | 100 GB | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 4.0 GB <sup>9</sup> |                        |             |
|                                                |                 | Enterprise <sup>8</sup>                            | 2             | 200 GB | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 4.0 GB <sup>9</sup> |                        |             |
| MiContact Center Business                      | 8.0, 7.0, 7.1.x | Enterprise                                         | 8             | 120 GB | 6 GHz                 | 16 GB               | 0.6 MB/s               |             |
| Remote IVR                                     | 8.0, 7.0, 7.1.x | Enterprise                                         | 4             | 60 GB  | 2 GHz                 | 8.0 GB              | 0.7 MB/s               |             |
| MiContact Center Multi Tenant                  | 8.0             | 50 resilient tenants<br>(25 local, 25 remote)      | 8             | 120 GB | 9.5 GHz               | 16 GB               | 8.6 MB/s               | 198 IOPS    |
| MiCC Multi Tenant Remote IVR                   | 8.0             | 25 resilient tenants                               | 4             | 60 GB  | 5.0 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 4.4 MB/s               | 62 IOPS     |
| vCC                                            | 6.0             |                                                    | 4             | 60 GB  | 2.2 GHz               | 2 GB                |                        |             |
| vIVR                                           | 6.0             |                                                    | 4             | 120 GB | 2.5 GHz               | 4 GB                |                        |             |
| vCA                                            | 6.0             |                                                    | 4             | 80 GB  | 2.2 GHz               | 4 GB                |                        |             |
| MiContact Center Enterprise (formerly Solidus) | 9.1, 9.0        | MiCC Enterprise Server<br>1500 agents              | 4             | 200 GB | 1.0 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 0.1 MB/s               | 5 IOPS      |
|                                                |                 | OAS Server                                         | 4             | 80 GB  | 3.0 GHz               | 4.0 GB              | 0.1 MB/s               | 15 IOPS     |
|                                                |                 | DB Server                                          | 4             | 200 GB | 2.5 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 0.2 MB/s               | 15 IOPS     |
| Open Integration Gateway Virtual               | 3.1, 3.0        | 1500 apps<br>Up to 100 networked MiVoice Business  | 2             | 20 GB  | 1 GHz                 | 4 GB                | 0.8 MB/s               | 40 IOPS     |
|                                                |                 | 500 apps<br>Up to 250 stand-alone MiVoice Business | 2             | 20 GB  | 1 GHz                 | 4 GB                | 0.8 MB/s               | 40 IOPS     |

**Table 8: VMware required resource reservation and allocation**

| VIRTUAL APPLIANCE                      | RE-LEASE          | SYSTEM CAPACITY                                       | CONFIGURATION |                         | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |                     | EXPECTED MAXIMUM USAGE |                        |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
|                                        |                   |                                                       | VCPU          | DISK                    | CPU                   | MEMORY              | NETWORK I/O            | STORAGE I/O            |
| Open Integration Gateway Virtual       | 2.2               | 1 MiVoice Business<br>500 apps                        | 2             | 20 GB                   | 1 GHz                 | 4 GB                | 0.1 MB/s               | 4 IOPS                 |
|                                        |                   | up to 250 MiVoice Business                            | 2             | 20 GB                   | 1 GHz                 | 4 GB                | 0.1 MB/s               | 18 IOPS                |
| MiVoice Business Express <sup>14</sup> | 7.2+,<br>7.1, 7.0 | 250 users                                             | 2             | 40 GB                   | 2.5 GHz               | 8.0 GB              | 2.0 MB/s               | 95 IOPS <sup>18</sup>  |
|                                        |                   | 500 users                                             | 4             | 80 GB                   | 5 GHz                 | 8.0 GB              | 4.0 MB/s               | 120 IOPS               |
| MiCollab with Voice <sup>14</sup>      | 6.0               | 250 users                                             | 2             | 40 GB                   | 2.5 GHz               | 6.0 GB              | 0.6 MB/s               | 53 IOPS <sup>18</sup>  |
|                                        |                   | 500 users                                             | 4             | 80 GB                   | 5 GHz                 | 8.0 GB              | 2.5 MB/s               | 120 IOPS               |
| vUCC <sup>14</sup>                     | 5.0 SP1           | 250 users                                             | 2             | 40 GB                   | 2.5 GHz               | 6 GB                | 15 MB/s                | 210 IOPS <sup>14</sup> |
|                                        | 5.0               | 150 users                                             |               |                         |                       |                     | 9 MB/s                 | 122 IOPS               |
| vUIC                                   | 3.0               |                                                       | 1             | 10 GB                   | None <sup>10</sup>    | None <sup>10</sup>  |                        |                        |
| Oria Virtual                           | 5.2, 5.1          | 1k customers,<br>100k users,<br>5k users/<br>customer | 4             | 50 GB                   | 4 GHz                 | 8 GB                |                        |                        |
| Oria Virtual                           | 5.0 SP1,<br>5.0   | 10,000 nodes                                          | 4             | 50 GB                   | 4 GHz                 | 6 GB                |                        |                        |
| Oria Virtual                           | 4.x, 3.3          | 10,000 nodes                                          | 4             | 50 GB                   | None <sup>10</sup>    | 6 GB                |                        |                        |
| MiVoice Call Recording                 | 9.0 SPx,<br>9.0   | 25 ports                                              | 2             | 100 GB                  | 2 GHz                 | 2 GB                |                        |                        |
|                                        |                   | 50 ports                                              | 3             | 100 GB                  | 3 GHz                 | 2 GB                |                        |                        |
|                                        |                   | 750 ports                                             | 12            | 100 GB                  | 12 GHz                | 8 GB                |                        |                        |
| MiVoice Call Recording                 | 8.1 SP1           | 25 ports                                              | 2             | 100 GB                  | 0 GHz                 | 4 GB                |                        |                        |
|                                        |                   | 350 ports                                             | 4             | 100 GB                  | 0 GHz                 | 8 GB                |                        |                        |
| MiContact Center Office Virtual        | 6.1 SP1           | Entry level <sup>8</sup>                              | 2             | 40 GB                   | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 2.0 GB <sup>9</sup> | 2.7 MB/s               | 17 IOPS                |
|                                        | 6.1, 6.0          | Mid-range <sup>8</sup>                                | 2             | 100 GB                  | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 4.0 GB <sup>9</sup> | 3 MB/s                 | 46 IOPS                |
|                                        |                   | Enterprise <sup>8</sup>                               | 2             | 200 GB                  | 2 GHz <sup>9</sup>    | 4.0 GB <sup>9</sup> | 3 MB/s                 | 46 IOPS                |
| Enterprise Manager <sup>6</sup>        | 7.0               |                                                       | 4             | 45-165 GB <sup>11</sup> |                       | 1.0-2.0 GB          |                        |                        |

**Notes:**

1. The VMware Hypervisor consumes resources from the platform it is running on: 1 vCPU, 2.0 GBytes RAM, 2 GHz CPU.
2. Voice Mail is based on twelve active channels. Resource usage is additional to that needed by the MiVoice Business Virtual. (For lower numbers of users in vMCD, voice mail was based on eight active channels.)
3. The CPU, Memory, Storage Capacity, and CPU/memory reservations are set to their defaults at installation time. The network and storage capacity are estimates of what is required to achieve the best voice quality.

Changing the Virtual Machine settings from vSphere may result in performance degradation or voice quality issues. This applies to all of the appliances that handle voice traffic, including MiVoice Business Virtual, NuPoint Virtual, MBG Virtual, MiCollab Virtual, and MiVoice Business Express.

4. The CPU reservation can be altered to support different system configurations. Note that the MiVoice Business 5000 user configuration is not available in the OVA, and must be configured manually. See [“Increasing resources for larger dimensions”](#) on page 28.
5. Each virtual machine has an additional memory cost—overhead needed by VMware Hypervisor to manage it. The overhead amount is based on the memory allocated and the number of vCPUs. In ESXi 5.0, the memory overhead for a VM of the size of Mitel virtual appliances ranges from 100 MB to as high as 500 MB each. Refer to vSphere Resource Management documentation.
6. Though not packaged as an OVA, these virtual appliances consume the resources specified here. The Memory number is not a reservation, but a recommendation of what should be made available.
7. Hard disk space required depends on Operating System: Windows Server 2008 R2 (32/64 bit) requires 32 GB; Windows Server 2003 (32 bit) requires 16 GB; Windows 7 Enterprise, Professional, or Ultimate (32/64 bit) requires 25 GB; Windows XP Pro SP3 (32 bit) requires 10 GB.
8. MiContact Center Office ships with entry-level settings.
9. MiContact Center Office uses the **Normal** setting for CPU Shares and Memory Shares.
10. Although no resource reservations are required for Oria 4.0 SP2, it is recommended that the reservations noted above be applied manually for Oria 5.0+.
11. MiVoice Enterprise Manager recommends 40 GB to manage two nodes, 120 GB to manage 50 nodes, and 160 GB to manage 250-1000 nodes.
12. Live Business Gateway requires that no third-party software be installed on the same virtual machine.
13. MBG Virtual SMB supports 125 concurrent G.711 simple calls across Teleworker, SIP Proxy, and Secure Recording Connector, which translates into support for about 250 users (registered devices). MBG Enterprise Virtual supports up to 500 concurrent G.711 simple calls or 2500 users per MBG Virtual.
14. The Network requirements stated here are for both LAN and WAN combined.  
For detailed information about deploying MiVoice Business Express, refer to the *MiVoice Business Express Deployment Guide*. This guide also includes Engineering Guidelines information.
15. In all the Enterprise configurations for MiCollab, the MiVoice Border Gateway must be used only for management. All media traffic is handled by a separate standalone MBG. The single-app MiCollab Client for 5000 users must be in co-located mode and all NuPoint UM traffic is handled by a separate standalone NuPoint UM.
16. Mitel publishes the application IOPS based on internal testing. To calculate the actual disk speed required to support these applications, the RAID type, disks in the array, and read and write workload must be taken into account.
17. Mitel has increased the OVA sizes from 150 to 250 for the SMB profile. If the customer has previously deployed a 150 user system, the OVA can be reduced to meet the 150 user specifications, as previously published.
18. The IOPS requirement stated for MiVoice Business Express does not include the additional requirement for MiCollab AWW video session recording.

### Increasing resources for larger dimensions

#### To configure for larger dimensions:

1. From the VMware vSphere client, start the OVF deployment by specifying the location of the virtual OVA file.
2. Complete the steps in the deployment wizard and:
  - Select **Enterprise** as the **Configuration** in the **Deployment Configuration** section.
  - Ensure that the option to **Power on after deployment** is NOT selected.
3. After the deployment is complete and the virtual machine is created, right-click the virtual machine and select **Edit Settings**.

4. In the **Hardware** tab:
  - a. Select **CPUs** and change the **Number of virtual sockets** to the appropriate value in [Table 8](#).
  - b. Select **Memory** and change the **Memory Size** to the appropriate value in [Table 8](#).
  - c. Select **Hard disk 2** and change the **Provisioned Size** to the appropriate value in [Table 8](#).
5. In the **Resources** tab:
  - a. Select **CPU** and change the **Reservation** to the appropriate value in [Table 8](#).
  - b. Select the **Memory** and change the **Reservation** to the appropriate value in [Table 8](#).
6. Apply the changes by clicking **OK**.
7. Power on the virtual machine.

### CPU and memory resource reservation

Each Mitel virtual appliance is built with the resource reservation required for the performance Service Level Agreements already set. Do not change the resource reservation. If you choose to reduce the resource reservation, you do so at your own risk, and you must monitor performance carefully to ensure that you always retain some headroom.



---

**CAUTION: IF YOU REDUCE YOUR RESOURCE RESERVATION, MITEL SUPPORT WILL ASK YOU TO INCREASE THE RESOURCE LEVEL TO THE AS-SHIPPED VALUE BEFORE PROVIDING SUPPORT RELATED TO THE SERVICE LEVEL AGREEMENTS.**

---

### Resource dimensioning

In keeping with VMware best practices and Mitel requirements, you must have a minimum of 2 GB of memory allocated for the VMware Hypervisor (ESXi).

It is common practice to use resource over-subscription when provisioning your virtual machines. This is allowed, but you must observe the guidelines in the VMware best practices, and the Mitel maximum of 70% loading. This limit includes all of the Mitel appliances and all of the third-party virtual applications; the peak load for the total of all applications running on an individual host server must not exceed 70%.

Refer to the *VMware vSphere Resource Management Guide* and the *Performance Best Practices for VMware vSphere* on the VMware Web site.



---

**CAUTION: You must maintain CPU Headroom of 30% over the peak load to guarantee service level agreement (SLA) performance.**

---

### Using Resource Pools

In an advanced environment, you might choose to set up one or more resource pools. Resource pool level resource reservations can be used to set upper and lower limits on resources available

to all contained VMs (or further child resource pools), so if you choose to set up a resource pool, you must still allocate enough CPU and RAM to meet the needs of all resource reservations of the contained VMs. The resource pool reservations must be greater than or equal to the sum of all reservations of the virtual appliances that will be deployed in that pool.

### Storage provisioning

During deployment of the OVA file, you must choose the provisioning format. The choices are:

- Thin provisioned format - The VM storage is initially allocated based on the storage required at the time of deployment, and can expand as storage needs increase. This is more efficient in terms of total storage requirement, but can also be considerably slower as the storage grows and becomes more fragmented.
- Thick provisioned format - Causes immediate allocation of all storage required. This is less efficient in terms of total storage requirement (does not allow over-commit), but it guarantees optimum performance. Mitel virtual appliances that are sensitive to voice quality, including MiVoice Business Virtual, MiVoice Border Gateway, NuPoint Virtual, and MiVoice Business Express require thick provisioning to ensure good voice quality from the first call. For more information, refer to the product-specific documentation.

Thick provisioned format includes two additional options: Lazy-zeroed and Eager-zeroed. Mitel recommends using the Lazy-zeroed option. For more information about storage provisioning and these settings, see “Disk provisioning” on page 127.



**Note:** If you are using a storage technology with de-duplication capability, then the difference between thin and thick-provisioned formats is reduced, and you may find that Thin provisioning is sufficient.

The Mitel recommendation is to use Thick provisioning for all Mitel virtual appliances.

Contact your storage provider for information about the over-commit capabilities of the storage option you are using.

### Resource sharing guidelines

One of the major advantages of virtualization is that you can co-locate multiple VMs on one host server.

Because most of Mitel's virtual applications provide real time voice, the customer will experience voice quality issues if insufficient CPU resources are allocated. Mitel builds in VMware resource reservation settings that will prevent resource limitation issues for typical customer installations.

VMware uses resource reservation to guarantee that the specified amount of the resource (CPU cycles and memory) is always available to the VM, regardless of the needs of other VMs sharing the resource.

The host CPU utilization must be maintained below 70% to prevent voice quality issues, as discussed in “Resource dimensioning” on page 29.

Should performance or quality issues arise after reducing the resource reservation below the settings provided by Mitel, the first action Mitel Product Support will suggest is to restore the reservations to Mitel-mandated values.



### *Sharing with third-party virtual appliances*

Mitel virtual appliances may be installed into the Virtual Infrastructure, where they will share resources with third-party virtual appliances and applications. A primary consideration in this scenario is ensuring that resource allocations for Mitel voice operations (MiVoice Business Virtual and other real-time voice applications) are adequate for good voice quality. Giving them too little resource reservation and priority may result in voice quality issues. These issues may be very transitory, based on what all the virtual appliances are doing at any given point in time. This can make troubleshooting very difficult.

There are two ways to ensure good performance of Mitel real-time applications; by setting a guaranteed resource reservation for the time-sensitive applications, or by giving each application a share-based percentage of the total CPU.

Setting a guaranteed resource reservation is the best way to ensure that enough CPU is allocated to the voice applications; a percentage-based allocation does not guarantee the required performance level in cases where the CPU is overloaded.

When co-locating Mitel and third-party applications, you must ensure that restart priorities are set correctly. MiVoice Business Virtual should be set to the highest priority. This sets the MiVoice Business Virtual VM ahead of other non-critical appliances in the event that a host fails. For example, you would set instances of MiVoice Business Virtual at the top priority, with MiCollab Virtual at a slightly lower priority, followed by your other business applications. Refer to [“Resiliency, high availability, and disaster recovery” on page 36](#) for more information.

Should performance or quality issues arise after you have reduced the resource reservation below the settings provided by Mitel, you will be asked to restore the resource reservations before support is offered for SLA issues. Maximum loading, including all Mitel and third-party virtual appliances, is 70%.

### *Sharing only with MiVoice Business Virtual instances*

When only MiVoice Business Virtual controllers of the same capacity are running on a virtual server, they all have the same sensitivity to latency, and all the instances have equal priority. In this case, resource reservation is optional, since without it, VMware moves the resource between MiVoice Business Virtual controllers as needed. This may provide better sharing of resources based on actual demand rather than through static reservation, and may allow increased Mitel MiVoice Business Virtual densities.

When resource reservations are removed in an all-MiVoice Business Virtual sharing environment, it is very important to ensure that large workloads (such as database backups) are scheduled such that these loads are staggered across the instances (scheduled to start at different times), and/or are scheduled to occur at time when the affected instances are expected to be in a lower voice handling workload period (late night backup schedule).

### *Sharing with other Mitel virtual appliances*

Deploying multiple Mitel applications on one virtual server has advantages in that the various Mitel applications have similar requirements, and they are intended to work together. This generally simplifies resource considerations, and can result in lower maintenance costs.

When co-locating multiple instances of different Mitel virtual appliances, consider setting up a resource pool. In a resource pool, you can set priorities for resource allocation within the pool. For more information about resource pools, see [“Using Resource Pools” on page 29](#).

Minimum storage requirements are product specific, and different for every Mitel virtual appliance. For product-specific storage requirements, refer to the applicable Mitel Engineering Guide. For the I/O characterization specifics, see [Table 8 on page 22](#).

### Other virtual appliance management considerations

This section describes some additional items to consider when you deploy Mitel virtual appliances and applications.

#### *Anti-affinity rules*

Some applications, especially when deployed in resiliency configurations, require that VMs for the applications do not reside on the same physical host server. Rules that ensure that certain VMs remain on different servers are called anti-affinity rules.

For example, a MiVoice Business Virtual primary controller VM should never be allowed to run on the same hardware as the corresponding MiVoice Business Virtual secondary controller VM. VMware vCenter anti-affinity rules should be set to ensure that the primary and secondary are never moved to the same host server, including during automated actions such as vMotion or HA. See [“Resiliency, high availability, and disaster recovery” on page 36](#) and the VMware documentation for more information.

#### *Hyper-Threading and performance impact*

Intel's Hyper-Threading Technology makes one core appear as two logical processors, but the two logical processors share most of the core's resources. If one logical processor is running at high utilization, the other logical processor will have very little capacity that can be used before the performance of both logical processors suffers.

AMD Opteron processors use Rapid Virtualization Indexing, which helps accelerate the performance of many virtualized applications by enabling hardware-based virtual machine memory management.

ESXi assigns adjacent vCPU numbers to the logical processors on the same core. VMware attempts to keep the vCPUs of different VMs on separate cores. Use caution if you decide to use VMware advanced features to override VMware default behavior—assigning vCPUs to VMs. If two high-priority VMs have vCPUs on the same core, performance problems are likely.

CPU utilization shown in VMware management tools (Performance tab in vSphere Client, for example) can be misleading. If half the vCPUs are running at near 100% (on different cores) and the other half of the vCPUs are running near 0%, the system is actually fully loaded, although the average CPU may show 50% (the average of all the vCPUs).

Similarly, the GHz value for the system is really closer to the GHz sum of all the cores, not the sum of all the vCPUs.

With servers hosting Mitel virtual appliances that are less demanding—appliances that do not have to handle voice traffic—the assigned vCPU capacity may exceed the number of logical processors (twice the number of physical cores) by up to 50%. For example, a server with 8

physical cores provides 16 logical cores when hyperthreading is enabled. In this case, with non-voice traffic, you can provision 50% more vCPUs, for a total of 24 vCPUs.

Also refer to the *Engineering Guidelines for MiVoice Business on ISS and MiVoice Business Virtual*.

### *Support for 3D acceleration*

By default, 3D acceleration is not enabled in ESXi 5.1 and 5.5. You can enable 3D support on virtual machines that have the Windows 8 guest operating system.

1. For the virtual machine you are enabling 3D acceleration on:
  - Verify that the virtual machine compatibility is ESXi 5.5.
  - Verify that the virtual machine is powered off.
2. Right-click the virtual machine in the inventory.
3. Click **Edit Settings**.
4. In the left column of the **Virtual Hardware** tab, expand **Video Card**.
5. Select **Enable 3D Support**.

### *Product-specific guidelines*

For additional product-specific restrictions and requirements, see the Mitel Engineering Guidelines for each product.

**Table 9: Engineering Guidelines documents for Mitel virtual applications**

| <b>MITEL VIRTUAL APPLIANCE PRODUCT</b> | <b>ENGINEERING GUIDELINES</b>                                                      |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MiVoice Business Virtual               | <i>MiVoice Business Engineering Guidelines</i>                                     |
| MiCollab Virtual                       | <i>MiCollab Engineering Guidelines</i>                                             |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual         | <i>MiVoice Border Gateway Engineering Guidelines</i>                               |
| MiCollab Client Virtual                | <i>MiCollab Client Engineering Guidelines</i>                                      |
| Virtual NuPoint Unified Messaging      | <i>NuPoint Engineering Guidelines</i><br><i>NuPoint Technician's Handbook.</i>     |
| MiContact Center Office                | <i>MiContact Center Office Technician's Handbook.</i>                              |
| MiVoice Business Express               | <i>MiVoice Business Express Deployment Guide (includes Engineering Guidelines)</i> |
| Mitel Open Integration Gateway Virtual | <i>Mitel Open Integration Gateway Engineering Guidelines</i>                       |
| Mitel Oria Virtual                     | <i>Oria Engineering Guidelines</i>                                                 |

## Supported VMware features

VMware offers many features and capabilities, not all of which are supported or applicable for Mitel virtual applications. Table 10 lists the basic VMware features, and which are supported by Mitel virtual appliances. See also Table 12, “Mitel support for VMware resiliency features,” on page 37.

**Table 10: Mitel support for basic VMware features**

| FEATURE                               | SUPPORTED?      | NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Virtual appliance deployment (Import) | Yes             | Some virtual appliances may require an AMC hardware ID reset on re-deployment. Refer to the product-specific installation documentation and the Release Notes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Export virtual appliance              | Yes             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Power ON                              | Yes             | The Power On starts a virtual application. To minimize downtime of Mitel virtual applications, set the <b>Virtual Machine Startup and Shutdown</b> setting to allow virtual machines to start and stop automatically with the system on a single server configuration. If several Mitel virtual appliances are configured to run on the same server, you may need to adjust the startup order based on the virtual appliance startup dependencies. |
| Shutdown Guest                        | Yes             | Performs a graceful shutdown of the operating system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Power OFF                             | Not recommended | This is the equivalent of cutting the power to a physical server. This can result in data corruption because the O/S is not shutdown cleanly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Reset                                 | Not recommended | This is the equivalent of performing a forced reset on a physical server. This can result in data corruption because the O/S is not shutdown cleanly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Restart Guest                         | Yes             | Restarts the virtual machine guest operating system gracefully.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Suspend/Resume                        | No              | <b>DO NOT</b> suspend operation. This results in a loss of communication services and could cause database corruption.<br>In addition, the remote end-points for Mitel virtual appliances that use VoIP connections will time out.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Cold Migration                        | Yes             | Migration is the process of moving a powered-off virtual appliance from one host or storage location to another.<br>Optionally, the user can relocate configuration and disk files to a new storage locations. Cold migration can be used to migrate virtual appliances from one data center to another.<br>For MiContact Center Office, you must comply with Windows licensing restrictions.                                                      |
| Migration while suspended             | No              | Suspend/resume is not supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

Table 10: Mitel support for basic VMware features

| FEATURE                                  | SUPPORTED?      | NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Snapshot (Powered OFF)                   | Yes             | Using a snapshot before an upgrade is recommended, as long as the snapshot is deleted after the upgrade is completed successfully.                                                                                                             |
| Snapshot (Powered ON/Live)               | No              | The performance impact on Disk I/O is too large, making it impossible for Mitel virtual appliances to meet voice quality requirements.                                                                                                         |
| Snapshot (Suspended)                     | Not recommended | Suspended snapshots are supported only for limited maintenance periods.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Cloning                                  | Yes             | The virtual appliance must be shut down before creating a clone.<br><br>The clone must be registered with the AMC using a new Application Record ID (ARID).<br><br>Cloning is not supported for configured MiVoice Business Express OVA files. |
| Health Monitoring                        | Yes             | This is the vSphere monitoring. (This not referring to the HA heartbeat mechanisms).                                                                                                                                                           |
| High Availability VM monitoring          | Yes             | VM Monitoring restarts individual virtual machines if their VMware Tools heartbeats are not received within a set time. You can enable this feature and configure the sensitivity with which VMware HA monitors non-responsiveness.            |
| High Availability Application monitoring | No              | Application Monitoring is not supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Performance Reports                      | Yes             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Virtual SAN                              | Yes             | vSAN automatically aggregates server disks in a cluster to create shared storage that can be rapidly provisioned from VMware vCenter during VM creation.                                                                                       |
| Virtual Flash                            | Yes             | Virtual Flash allows you to accelerate virtual machine performance through the use of local SSD disks, which serve flash memory cache to chosen virtual machines running on the ESXi host.                                                     |
| vCloud Air                               | Yes             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Storage I/O Control                      | Yes             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Network I/O Control                      | Yes             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

# Resiliency, high availability, and disaster recovery

Running your Mitel solution in a virtual environment allows even more options for high availability and fail-over. VMware availability-related features do not replace the underlying Mitel resiliency architecture (for those Mitel products that offer resiliency; MiVoice Business and MiVoice Border Gateway for example), but can supplement it to provide even higher availability levels, and improved ease of management within the virtualized environment.

For those Mitel products that do not offer application layer availability solutions, the VMware high availability (HA) features are highly recommended.

Whether or not you use VMware features for high availability, critical host servers must be arranged to ensure that one physical or electrical disruption cannot disable all servers in the cluster.

## System resiliency without VMware high availability features

Running your Mitel solution in a virtual environment, even without VMware high availability-related features enabled, allows options for high availability and fail-over because you can set up a physical primary MiVoice Business, with a virtual secondary for fail-over, or both primary and secondary MiVoice Business servers can be virtual (as long as you ensure that both primary and secondary do not end up on the same server; see “Anti-affinity rules” on page 32 for more information).

MiVoice Border Gateway (MBG) also includes resiliency capabilities; supported MiNet sets can support a resiliency list of up to four IP addresses. If a set loses its connection and cannot re-establish it, it will try the next IP address on its list until it has exhausted all IP addresses on its resiliency list. For MiNet sets supporting persistent resiliency lists, this resiliency list is retained through power-cycling. The resiliency list can be manually configured with arbitrary IP addresses. Ideally, they will be configured to correspond to multiple MBG servers.

Table 11 shows the list of Mitel resiliency guides.

| Table 11: Resiliency and high availability documentation |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| PRODUCT                                                  | GUIDES                                               |
| MiVoice Business                                         | <i>MiVoice Resiliency Guidelines</i>                 |
|                                                          | <i>3300 ICP Multi-Node Management Clustering</i>     |
| Mitel Automatic Call Distribution                        | <i>ACD Resiliency Getting Started Guide</i>          |
| MiVoice Border Gateway (MBG)                             | <i>MiVoice Border Gateway Engineering Guidelines</i> |

## System resiliency with VMware high availability features

Mitel products support many of the VMware high availability features, as shown in Table 12. It is important to note that the resiliency capabilities afforded through the use of VMware high availability features are not a substitute for the Mitel resiliency features (depending on your

requirements), but can be used in addition to the comprehensive capabilities designed into the Mitel products.

**Table 12: Mitel support for VMware resiliency features**

| FUNCTION               | SUPPORTED?       | NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| vMotion <sup>2</sup>   | Yes <sup>1</sup> | <p>While a vMotion operation is in progress, users may notice voice degradation, and some communication services may become unavailable for a brief time.</p> <p>For MiVoice Business Virtual, the voice degradation has been observed only in features provided by the Media Server. This includes conferencing, music-on--hold, paging, and RAD to external voice mail applications like NuPoint Unified Messaging.</p> <p>Ensure that anti-affinity rules are applied such that vMotion cannot move primary and secondary instances of a resilient Mitel application (MiVoice Business Virtual, MBG Virtual) to the same physical host server. For more information, see <a href="#">“Anti-affinity rules” on page 32</a>.</p> |
| Long Distance vMotion  | Yes              | <p>Movement of VMs from one vCenter server to another requires that both source and destination are running at least vCenter 6.0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using the UI, source and destination vCenter servers must be in the same Single Sign-on (SSO) domain.</li> <li>When using the API, source and destination vCenter servers can be in different Single Sign-on (SSO) domain.</li> </ul> <p>To use vMotion across vSwitches, you should have L2 VM connectivity, and L3 connections between vCenter servers. 250 Mbps network bandwidth is required per vMotion operation.</p> <p>See also the limitations of vMotion.</p>                                                                         |
| Storage vMotion        | Yes <sup>1</sup> | <p>Storage vMotion (also called storage migration) may reduce storage performance, with the potential for degraded voice quality while the migration is in progress. Use of Storage vMotion is recommended only when the VA is powered off or during periods of low workload.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| High Availability (HA) | Yes <sup>1</sup> | <p>Ensure that critical Mitel applications, such as MiVoice Business Virtual and MiVoice Border Gateway, are assigned high restart priorities.</p> <p>You must set anti-affinity rules such that clustered primary and secondary instances cannot run on the same host. See <a href="#">“Anti-affinity rules” on page 32</a>.</p> <p>Note that MiVoice Business Express requires a large amount of CPU and memory reservation and it will not restart on a server unless the appropriate resources are available.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Fault Tolerance (FT)   | No               | <p>FT resource requirements have a negative impact on performance of Mitel real-time vApps.</p> <p>FT also has strict requirements around set-up, the other VMware features that can be used with FT, and server BIOS settings, for example.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| FUNCTION                             | SUPPORTED?       | NOTES                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS) | Yes <sup>1</sup> | vMotion is used for this service, so the vMotion cautions apply. Configuring this feature with the Aggressive setting may affect Mitel virtual appliance performance. |
| Storage DRS                          | Yes <sup>1</sup> |                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Distributed Power Management (DPM)   | Yes <sup>1</sup> | vMotion is used for this service, so the vMotion cautions apply.                                                                                                      |
| Site Recovery Manager (SRM)          | Yes <sup>3</sup> | Mitel Professional Services engagement is required.                                                                                                                   |
| vSphere Replication                  | Yes              | vSphere Replication offers replication on a per-VM basis. vSphere Replication does not depend on Site Recovery Manager.                                               |

### Notes:

1. For MiContact Center Office, these features must comply with the Windows licensing restrictions.
2. Mitel expects vMotion and Storage vMotion to function properly with Mitel virtual appliances in accordance with supported configuration from VMware. Similarly, SAN or other storage connectivity is expected to work in VMware-supported configurations, subject to the I/O requirements listed in Table 8.  
If you want to use vMotion in a configuration that may be outside these specifications, contact Mitel Professional Services for assistance.
3. The following Mitel virtual appliances are considered SRM-compatible: MiCollab Virtual, MBG Virtual, MiCollab Client Virtual, NuPoint Virtual, and vMCD 6.0+ or MiVoice Business Virtual. MiVoice Business Express does not support SRM. Only Mitel phone sets models 53xx or later will automatically reconnect to the recovered MiVoice Business Virtual controllers.



**Note:** Support for VMware features such as vMotion, Storage vMotion, HA, SRM, cloning, templates, and so on, do not require re-licensing of the application, because Mitel virtual application licensing Application Record IDs (ARIDs) are based on globally unique IDs (GUIDs) used by the ARID, and are not dependent on the specific hardware the application is running on.

## VMware High Availability (HA)

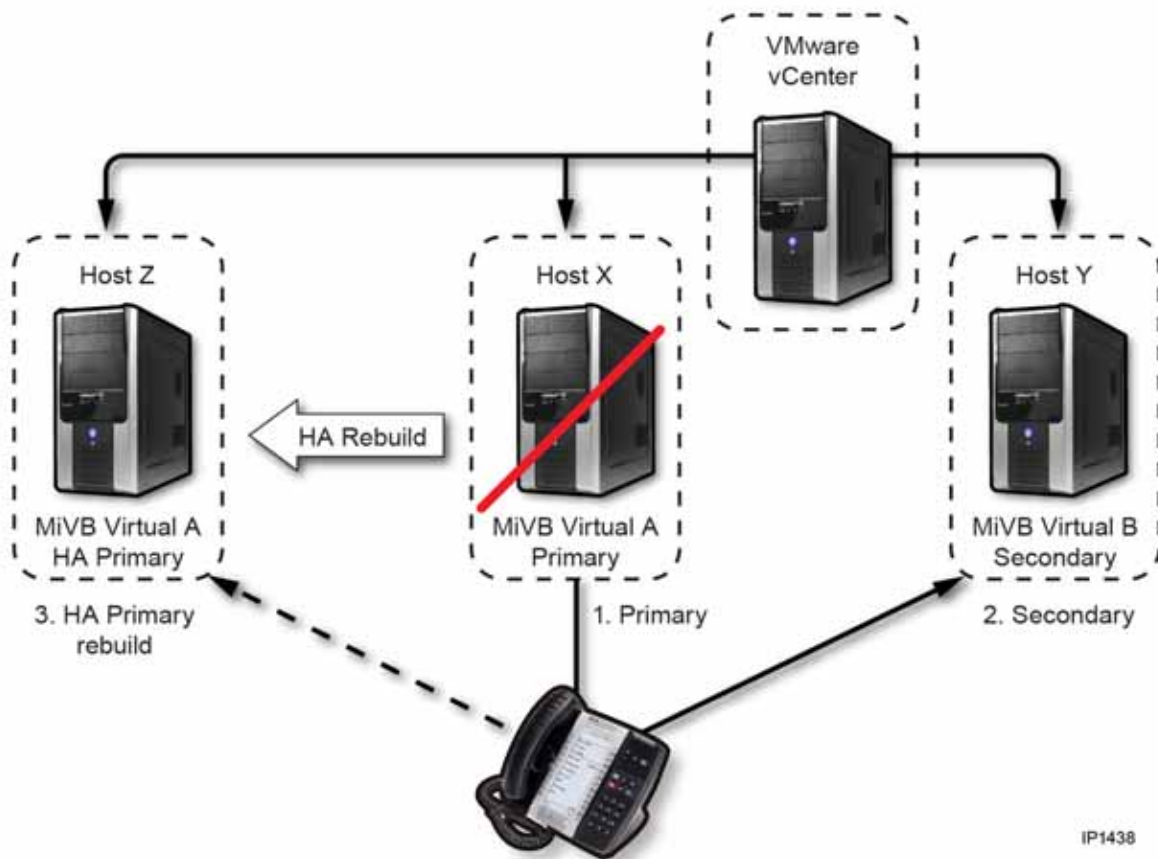
The VMware High Availability (HA) feature enables monitoring of running VMs and host servers, and the ability to restart VMs elsewhere in the cluster in the case of host failure. HA provides protection for VMs at the cluster level, within a single data center.

HA can be a very effective supplement to Mitel built-in resiliency features. HA can protect against individual VMware host failures by restarting VMs that were running on the failed host, on a different host. While some down-time is involved for the VMs during the HA operation (as they are started on the new host), the inherent Mitel resiliency architecture provides zero downtime for the overall solution. Use of VMware HA does not take the place of Mitel resiliency operations, but supplements them by greatly reducing downtime of the nodes involved.



**Note:** In configuring any system supporting Mitel resilient applications (MiVoice Business Virtual and MiVoice Border Gateway, for example), it is extremely important to configure anti-affinity rules to ensure primary and corresponding secondary nodes are never allowed to run on the same physical host server. This would defeat the inherent Mitel resiliency operations. See “Anti-affinity rules” on page 32.





**Figure 3: Resiliency using virtual MiVoice Business**

In the example in Figure 3, if MiVB Virtual A is a primary node deployed on host X, with HA protection to restart on some other host, and MiVB Virtual B is a secondary node deployed on host Y, also with HA protection, then the following failure scenario can be configured:

1. Host X fails. MiVB Virtual A is now out of service.
2. All IP Phones homed to MiVB Virtual A immediately re-home (fail over) to MiVB Virtual B on Host Y (their secondary) with near-zero loss of service (seconds to fail over, and no loss of active calls).
3. VMware HA then ensures that MiVB Virtual A is restarted on Host Z (anti-affinity rules apply so that MiVB Virtual A will not be restarted on the same host server as MiVB Virtual B), and during this time service is maintained by the secondary controller: MiVB Virtual B on Host Y.
4. When MiVB Virtual A is recovered a few minutes later, the IP Phones again re-home to MiVB Virtual A, now running on Host Z. In this case, HA protection of the primary node effectively reduces down time of the primary node to minutes.

In the physical world, it could take hours or even days to replace physical hardware running the primary node, and the devices would continue to run on the secondary for the duration. Not

only is this non-optimal operation, it also adds the risk of additional down time, should node B also fail during the Node A repair time.

In the reverse scenario where failure happens on host Y, the secondary MiVB Virtual is restarted elsewhere, but with no loss of service since the IP Phones remain homed to their primary MiVB Virtual A.

HA protection can also be applied to Mitel virtual appliances that do not support inherent resiliency. While these applications are generally not considered mission critical, HA protection will allow the application to be monitored and automatically restarted elsewhere in the case of host failure. This will have the effect of reducing down time from hours or even days in the physical world to minutes in the virtual world.

When planning and configuring VMware HA protection, it is very important to consider the following:

- Anti-affinity rules must be put in place, such that primary and secondary nodes within a cluster cannot be run on the same physical host. This also applies in the event of HA operation restarting a node on a different host; the target host must also have the anti-affinity rules applied. See [“Anti-affinity rules” on page 32](#).
- Carefully consider HA restart priority settings for the protected virtual appliances. For example, it may be desirable to give primary nodes higher restart priority than secondary ones, or some application categories higher priority than others. For example, mission critical MiVoice Business Virtual controllers and MBG Virtual instances would be set for a higher restart priority than non-mission-critical applications.
- Plan the HA admission control policies to ensure adequate resources are reserved, in advance, to accommodate all high priority HA-protected applications, especially mission-critical Mitel virtual appliances. The admission control policies also affect the restart priority discussion above. See [“Admission control for High Availability \(HA\) clusters” on page 40](#) for recommendations for setting HA admission control policies.
- In circumstances where insufficient host resources exist after a failure, HA may override anti-affinity rules set at the Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS) level. This may result, for example, in MiVoice Business Virtual primary and secondary nodes running on the same host until the failed host can be repaired. For a single pair of MiVoice Business Virtual controllers, a minimum of three host servers would be required to avoid this, each with sufficient guaranteed spare capacity to accept and run the failed-over MiVoice Business node.

### Admission control for High Availability (HA) clusters

When configuring your high-availability VM cluster, you choose one of the following three admission policies:

- Host Failures Cluster Tolerates
- Percentage of Cluster Resources Reserved
- Specify a Failover Host

Alternatively, you can disable admission control if that makes sense for your implementation. If availability is more important than Service Level Agreement (SLA) performance upon failure,

then, in VMware vSphere, setting **Disable: Power on VMs that violate availability constraints** may be worth considering. Keep in mind that there is a risk of voice quality degradation.

If you disable admission control, you must manually manage the number of VMs allowed to run on the hosts and/or reduce the VM reservations to ensure that the VMs will be able to restart on another host in the event of a host failure; this is the source of the voice quality risk. Enabling admission control is generally recommended.

The three available VMware admission control policies are described in the following sections.

### *Host Failures Cluster Tolerates*

The **Host Failures Cluster Tolerates** admission control policy uses slot size calculations to determine whether enough capacity exists in the High Availability cluster to power on a virtual machine. This mode ensures HA for all the VMs in the cluster, and it is easy to configure, since VMware does all the resource calculations.

On the other hand, if a VM with a large resource reservation is introduced into the HA cluster, it can limit the number of VMs that can be powered on at one time. The large resource reservations set in the Mitel OVA files can change the slot size calculations for all the VMs in the cluster. Since most applications do not have an explicitly-set resource reservation, they work within the default 64 KB slot size, unless the slot size is changed by the introduction of an extra-large VM.

To avoid the potential problems associated with the cluster-wide slot size being changed to a large value by the introduction of Mitel appliances, you should set the maximum slot size manually, before adding the Mitel appliances. If you set a maximum, virtual machines larger than the set slot size are assigned multiple slots.

To reduce resource overhead due to the inefficiency in the slot size definition, you might consider creating separate clusters for different MiVoice Business Virtual and MBG Virtual deployments. For example, you could have a cluster with MiVoice Business instances dedicated and optimized for 150 users and another cluster optimized for 2500 users. The second cluster could use larger slot sizes.

### *Percentage of Cluster Resources Reserved*

Using this percentage-based admission control policy is potentially more cost effective. To allow a trade-off between cost and availability SLA, for example, you can set the percentage to ensure availability only for critical VMs (defined using **VM Restart Priority** in **Virtual Machine Options** under the VMware HA configuration panel).

The flexibility in this option comes with some complexity, however, since you have to determine the appropriate percentage for the required SLA. In addition, the percentage value may require on-going adjustment depending on:

- The SLA level (how many VMs must be protected)
- Changes in available resources in the cluster
- How many simultaneous host failures must be accommodated

The complexity of determining, monitoring, and re-adjusting the percentage setting affects the ongoing cost of maintaining the system, and the risk of undershooting customer SLA requirements during failures (lowered voice quality or inability to support full MiVoice Business resiliency, for example).

Another risk in using the **Percentage of Cluster Resources Reserved** admission control policy is that, in a cluster running close to capacity, there might be enough aggregate resources for a virtual machine to be failed over, but the resources might be fragmented across different hosts. When that happens, they are not usable. A virtual machine can run on only one ESXi host at a time.

### *Specify a Failover Host*

Using the **Specify a Failover Host** admission control policy, you specify one host to serve as a backup. It is kept idle so that it is always available to take over if another host fails. A couple of disadvantages to this admission strategy are:

- One dedicated host per cluster (the maximum allowed) is probably not sufficient in a large cluster.
- This resource is not used at all unless there is a failure, so under normal circumstances, the fail-over host resource is wasted.

For more information and detailed procedures, see the *VMware vSphere Administration Guide* and the *VMware vSphere Availability Guide*.

## vSphere Replication

VMware vSphere Replication is a feature of the vSphere platform. It copies a virtual machine to another location, within or between clusters, and makes the new copy available for restoration through the vCenter Server Web-based user interface. It provides hypervisor-based virtual machine level replication and recovery from a primary site to a secondary site.

vSphere Replication continues to protect the virtual machine by replicating changes made to the virtual machine, to the copy. This ensures that the virtual machine remains protected and is available for recovery without requiring restore from backup. vSphere Replication is provided as a no-charge component of all eligible vSphere licenses.

Unified management of vSphere Replication is provided through the new vSphere Web Client. This provides a common and unified screen for all aspects of virtual data center management, including many aspects of protection, such as replication, backup and restore.



**Note:** vSphere Replication is not intended to provide complex orchestration of disaster recovery in the manner of VMware Site Recovery Manager (SRM). vSphere Replication offers replication on a per-virtual machine basis to enable fine-grain recovery configurations for environments that need it.

There are two levels of replication, the storage level and the hypervisor level. vSphere (hypervisor level) replication is a part of SRM, and as a separately installed extension to vCenter Server.

## VMware Fault Tolerance (FT)

The VMware Fault Tolerance (FT) feature provides real-time recovery of running virtual appliances, with no restart required, and very low interruption of service. FT provides run-time protection for VMs at the cluster level, within a single data center.

Mitel virtual appliances do not support FT (see [Table 12 on page 37](#)). FT is very resource heavy, especially in the level of CPU resources consumed on multiple hosts, and the network load necessary to maintain synchronized state across the instances on those hosts negatively affects the performance of the Mitel real-time applications.

A combination of Mitel application level resiliency and VMware HA, as described previously, is recommended.

## VMware Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS) and vMotion

VMware Distributed Resource Scheduler (DRS) is a vMotion feature that enables dynamic load balancing across multiple hosts in a cluster, both at VM deployment time and, potentially, dynamically at run time.

While not directly related to resiliency and availability, DRS can play an important role in ensuring optimal performance during other operations. DRS ensures that VM resource reservations are honored, and can re-distribute loads to ensure overall optimal performance of all applicable VMs in the cluster. This can, in turn, help ensure optimal responsiveness and real-time behavior (voice quality) of Mitel virtual appliances.

vMotion can also be used to manually migrate running VMs to different hosts in the overall system, for example, in order to do maintenance of specific host servers (host software updates, trouble-shooting of host issues, hardware configuration, and so on). Migration to different hosts avoids downtime of the Mitel solution components during the host server maintenance operation, increasing overall availability. This is not feasible in the physical world.

Mitel strongly recommends enabling DRS at the cluster level where Mitel virtual appliances are deployed. To avoid the administrator having to monitor distribution behavior, the DRS automation level can be set to **Fully Automated**.



**Note:** Since DRS uses vMotion to dynamically distribute loads at run time, and vMotion operation can cause momentary pauses in voice streaming, it is an administrator decision whether to enable full automation, and if enabled, what **Migration threshold** to set (a more aggressive migration threshold will result in higher chance of vMotion operating during active voice streaming).

When DRS is enabled for Mitel virtual appliances, such as MiVoice Business Virtual and MBG Virtual that implement their own resiliency mechanisms, it is extremely important to set anti-affinity rules within DRS configuration to ensure that primary and secondary elements (for example, a primary MiVoice Business Virtual node and a secondary MiVoice Business Virtual node) are never allowed to run on the same physical host, since a single host failure could then defeat the inherent Mitel resiliency mechanisms. See also “Anti-affinity rules” on page 32.

## VMware Site Recovery Manager (SRM)

The VMware Site Recovery Manager (SRM) can be used to provide disaster recovery in the event of full site failures or large scale maintenance operations to the data center. SRM makes use of vSphere replication to provide ongoing replication of a set of protected VMs in the primary data center (the protected site), and the ability to reconfigure and restart the protected VMs at a remote site (the recovery site) in the event of disaster at the protected site. SRM now also supports integration with Virtual SAN.

SRM fail-over is not automatic; data center staff must initiate SRM manually.



**Note:** MCDs and vMCDs using MCD clustering and IP Trunks are not supported in SRM for versions earlier than MiVoice Business Virtual Release 7.0; only SIP trunks and standalone vMCDs can be supported.

A deployment configuration has been tested with MiVoice Business Virtual that uses resiliency along with SRM, and this is supported for MiVoice Business Virtual Release 7.0 and later.

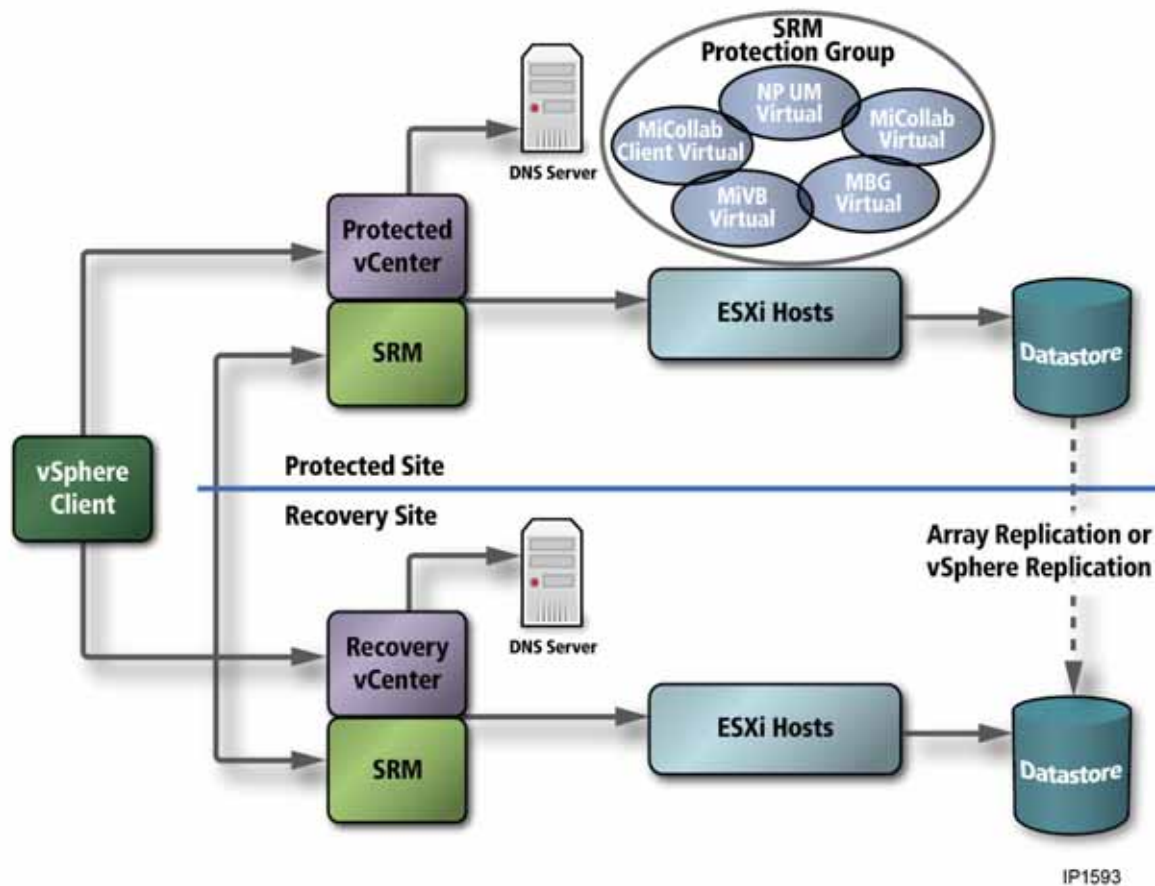


Figure 4: Disaster Recovery using VMware SRM

While SRM recovery does not provide full resiliency, in the sense of near-zero downtime, it does provide for recovery in the event of large incidents such as data center fire, flood, power failure, and so on, or planned large scale maintenance. Recovery is typically expected to be measurable in tens of minutes after triggering of the SRM fail-over operation, depending on the size and complexity of the set of protected VMs, and with some potential loss of data due to the replication interval.

The following Mitel virtual appliances are considered SRM-compatible: MiCollab Virtual, MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual, MiCollab Client Virtual, NuPoint Virtual, and MCD 6.0+ or MiVoice Business Virtual 7.0+, and vMCD 6.0 (stand-alone configuration and SIP trunking, only—no IP trunking). MiVoice Business Express does not support SRM. Only Mitel phone sets models 53xx or later automatically reconnect to the recovered MiVoice Business Virtual controllers.



**Note:** Mitel does not currently support the simultaneous movement of more than one System Data Synchronization (SDS) connected node.

In cases where phone sets directly connected to the MiVoice Business Virtual are expected to re-connect to the recovered MiVoice Business Virtual, DHCP server configuration should be used. DHCP servers must be available before and after the disaster to provide offers to internal sets when they perform DHCP discovery.



**Note:** After deployment, do not rename the Mitel virtual appliances that are part of the SRM plan.

**Table 13: Software version requirement for SRM solution**

| SOFTWARE COMPONENT                             | VERSION REQUIRED                                                                          | MANDATORY OR OPTIONAL?                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VMware vCenter Server                          | 6.0, 5.5, 5.1                                                                             | Mandatory                                                                  |
| VMware vCenter Site Recovery Manager Extension | 6.0 with vCenter Server 6.0<br>5.5 with vCenter Server 5.5<br>5.1 with vCenter Server 5.1 | Mandatory                                                                  |
| DNS server                                     | Any version and server type that adheres to DNS protocol                                  | Optional<br>Can be used to store DNS records for Mitel virtual appliances. |

Due to the complexity, detailed planning, and testing required to properly deploy SRM coverage for Mitel virtual appliances, Mitel requires that you engage Mitel Professional Services to ensure that the deployment is correct. Each deployment can be expected to be different, based on the specific environment. Contact Mitel Professional Services to help in using VMware Site Recovery Manager to create your Site Recovery Plan.





# Chapter 3

## DEPLOYING ON MICROSOFT HYPER-V INFRASTRUCTURE



## Deploying Mitel virtual applications in a Hyper-V virtual infrastructure

This chapter describes Hyper-V deployment considerations specific to introducing Mitel virtualized applications in your IT infrastructure and how to install and upgrade a Hyper-V deployment.

Hyper-V exists in two variants:

- As a standalone product called Hyper-V Server
- As an installable role in Windows Server

The latest releases of the following Mitel virtual appliances are supported on Hyper-V when installed in the standalone product—Hyper-V Server 2012 R2—and when installed as a role in Windows Server 2012 R2. Older versions of Hyper-V and older versions of the Mitel products are not supported.

- MiVoice Business
- MiVoice Business Express
- MiCollab
- MiCollab Client
- NuPoint Unified Messaging
- MiVoice Border Gateway
- MiContact Center (also tested in Microsoft Hyper-V Server 2008)

Mitel currently supports Power On and Shutdown Guest functions in the Hyper-V environment. Advanced features and clustering have not been fully tested and are not supported

### Preparing the Hyper-V infrastructure

Regardless of the deployment environment, it is important that the overall Hyper-V infrastructure is correctly configured to guarantee the highest level of availability and performance.

For best practices for physical servers hosting Hyper-V roles, refer to the Microsoft documentation, and the following recommendations:

- Ensure that all hosts that will be used to support real-time sensitive applications, such as NuPoint UM Virtual, MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual, and so on, are configured for maximum performance. This includes processor and BIOS settings requirements as listed in “Minimum hardware requirements” on page 9.
- Supply plenty of bandwidth: 1 GB across each of at least four physical ports on each host server is considered the minimum for most deployments.
- Separate the Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) and IP interfaces for storage traffic (assuming Storage Area Network (SAN), Network File System (NFS), or similar IP storage is used). This provides adequate throughput for storage operations, while isolating traffic from other flows.

- Preferably, support storage networking on two or more physical ports on the host servers, directed at different network switches to provide resiliency. You should also consider configuring these ports for NIC bonding (using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) or similar) to improve overall throughput.
- Voice traffic to and from the Mitel applications should be separate from data traffic. Implement a dedicated voice VLAN, and support it through multiple physical ports. The same recommendation applies for physical implementations.

### Adding NICs

Table 14 shows how many NICs you need for various configurations of the Mitel virtual applications in the Hyper-V environment. Refer to the Microsoft documentation for instructions.

**Table 14: NICs required by Mitel virtual application and configuration**

| VIRTUAL MACHINE          | DEPLOYMENT OPTION | NUMBER OF NICs REQUIRED |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| MiVoice Business         | Server-only       | 1                       |
| MiVoice Business Express | Server-only       | 1                       |
|                          | Server gateway    | 2                       |
| MiCollab Virtual         | Server-only       | 1                       |
|                          | Server gateway    | 2                       |
| MiCollab Client Virtual  | Server-only       | 1                       |
| NuPoint UM Virtual       | Server-only       | 1                       |
| MiVoice Border Gateway   | Server-only       | 1                       |
|                          | Server gateway    | 2                       |

### Storage

In planning connections to, and stability of, the network storage, consider the following guidelines:

- Ensure adequate throughput to support the intended applications. Refer to the product-specific documentation for detailed requirements.
- Support storage using multi-path networking, with a minimum of two physical ports on each host server and on each of the storage units, directed at different network switches. This provides resiliency.
- RAID protection of all storage is strongly recommended.

Mitel virtual applications support for various storage architectures matches that of Hyper-V , unless specifically stated otherwise. This includes iSCSI, NFS, Fibre Channel, and host-local storage. For details, refer to the Mitel documentation for each virtual application, available at Mitel OnLine.



**Note:** Regardless of the storage technology used, ensure that the storage used by Mitel applications meets or exceeds the specific requirements of the applications involved, in terms of IOPS and latency. See Table 15, “Hyper-V resource requirements,” on page 51, and application-specific Engineering Guidelines.

## Host server sizing and resource management considerations

When setting up your environment in preparation for deployment of Mitel virtual application, you must consider host sizing and resource management.

Table 15 shows the resource allocation and resource reservation requirements for each of the supported Mitel virtual applications.

**Table 15: Hyper-V resource requirements**

|                                   | RELEASE                      | SYSTEM<br>CAPACITY     | CONFIGURATION |          | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |         |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|----------|-----------------------|---------|
|                                   |                              |                        | VCPU          | DISK     | CPU                   | MEMORY  |
| Hyper-V                           | Windows<br>Server 2012<br>R2 |                        | 1             | 20 GB    | 2 GHz                 | 2.0 GB  |
| <b>CURRENT RELEASES</b>           |                              |                        |               |          |                       |         |
| MiVoice<br>Business<br>Virtual    | 8.0                          | 250 devices            | 2             | 20 GB    | 50%<br>2 GHz          | 1.5 GB  |
|                                   |                              | 1500 devices           | 6             | 20 GB    | 50%<br>6 GHz          | 2.0 GB  |
|                                   |                              | 2500 devices           | 8             | 20 GB    | 60%<br>10 GHz         | 2.0 GB  |
|                                   |                              | Embedded Voice<br>Mail |               | included |                       |         |
| MiCollab<br>Virtual<br>Multi-App  | 7.3                          | 250 users              | 4             | 50 GB    | 50%<br>4 GHz          | 8.0 GB  |
|                                   |                              | 1500 users             | 8             | 90 GB    | 75%<br>12 GHz         | 8.0 GB  |
| MiCollab<br>Virtual<br>Single App | 7.3                          | 5000 users             |               |          |                       |         |
| MiCollab<br>AWV                   | 6.3                          | 500 ports              | 16            | 120 GB   | 35%<br>12 GHz         | 16.0 GB |
| MiCollab<br>Client                | 7.3                          | 5000 ports             | 16            | 120 GB   | 50%<br>16 GHz         | 16.0 GB |
| NuPoint UM                        | 8.3                          | 120 ports              | 16            | 120 GB   | 30%<br>10 GHz         | 16.0 GB |

**Table 15: Hyper-V resource requirements**

|                               | RELEASE                 | SYSTEM<br>CAPACITY  | CONFIGURATION |          | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |                       |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------|----------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
|                               |                         |                     | VCPU          | DISK     | CPU                   | MEMORY                |
| MiVoiceBorder Gateway Virtual | 9.4                     | 250 users           | 2             | 20 GB    | 50%<br>2.0 GHz        | 1.0 GB                |
|                               |                         | 2500 users          | 6             | 40 GB    | 80%<br>10.0 GHz       | 2.0 GB                |
| MiContact Center              | 8.1 SPx                 | Enterprise          | 8             | 120 GB   | 35%<br>6 GHz          | 16 GB                 |
| Remote IVR                    | 8.1 SPx                 | Enterprise          | 4             | 60 GB    | 25%<br>2 GHz          | 4 GB                  |
| MiVoice Business Express      | 7.3                     | 250 users           | 4             | 40 GB    | 60%<br>5 GHz          | 8 GB                  |
|                               |                         | 500 users           | 8             | 80 GB    | 60%<br>10 GHz         | 8 GB                  |
| PREVIOUS RELEASES             |                         |                     |               |          |                       |                       |
| MiVoice Business Virtual      | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0 SP1      | 250 devices         | 2             | 20 GB    | 50%<br>2 GHz          | 1.5 GB                |
|                               |                         | 1500 devices        | 6             | 20 GB    | 50%<br>6 GHz          | 2.0 GB                |
|                               |                         | 2500 devices        | 8             | 20 GB    | 60%<br>10 GHz         | 2.0 GB                |
|                               |                         | Embedded Voice Mail |               | included |                       |                       |
| MiCollab Virtual Multi-App    | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0 SP1      | 250 users           | 4             | 50 GB    | 50%<br>4 GHz          | 8.0 GB<br>/<br>5.0 GB |
|                               |                         | 1500 users          | 8             | 90 GB    | 75%<br>12 GHz         | 8.0 GB<br>/<br>7.0 GB |
| MiCollab Virtual Single App   | 7.2+, 7.1 6.0 SP1       | 5000 users          |               |          |                       |                       |
| MiCollab AWV                  | 6.2+, 6.1, 6.0          | 500 ports           | 16            | 120 GB   | 35%<br>12 GHz         | 16.0 GB               |
| MiCollab Client               | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0, 6.0 SP4 | 5000 ports          | 16            | 120 GB   | 50%<br>16 GHz         | 16.0 GB               |
| NuPoint UM                    | 8.2+, 8.1, 8.0, 7.0 SP1 | 120 ports           | 16            | 120 GB   | 30%<br>10 GHz         | 16.0 GB               |

Table 15: Hyper-V resource requirements

|                                     | RELEASE               | SYSTEM<br>CAPACITY | CONFIGURATION |        | RESOURCE RESERVATIONS |        |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------|--------|-----------------------|--------|
|                                     |                       |                    | VCPU          | DISK   | CPU                   | MEMORY |
| NuPoint UM<br>Standalone            | 8.2+, 8.1,<br>8.0     | 60 ports           | 4             | 130 GB | 50 %<br>4 GHz         | 4.0 GB |
|                                     | 7.0 SP1               | 120 ports          | 8             | 260 GB | 50 %<br>8 GHz         | 6.0 GB |
| MiContact<br>Center                 | 8.1                   | Enterprise         | 8             | 120 GB | 35%<br>6 GHz          | 16 GB  |
| Remote IVR                          | 8.1                   | Enterprise         | 4             | 60 GB  | 25%<br>2 GHz          | 4 GB   |
| MiVoiceBorder<br>Gateway<br>Virtual | 9.3, 9.2, 9.1,<br>9.0 | 250 users          | 2             | 20 GB  | 50%<br>2.0 GHz        | 1.0 GB |
|                                     | 8.1 SP1               | 2500 users         | 6             | 40 GB  | 80%<br>10.0 GHz       | 2.0 GB |
| MiVoice<br>Business<br>Express      | 7.2+, 7.1,<br>7.0     | 250 users          | 4             | 40 GB  | 60%<br>5 GHz          | 8 GB   |
|                                     |                       | 500 users          | 8             | 80 GB  | 60%<br>10 GHz         | 8 GB   |

**Notes:**

1. It is required that the memory allocation for Hyper-V is configured by setting the startup RAM to a static value rather than configuring it as Dynamic Memory. It is also recommended that the **Memory weight** be set to **High** to ensure that the virtual machine is given priority by Hyper-V.
2. The number of Virtual Processors is set using the **Number of Virtual Processors** setting. Corresponding to this, the **Virtual Machine Reserve Percentage** should be set in accordance with the values in the table. Note that this represents Mitel's recommended Virtual Processor and Reserve Percentage based on a 2.0 GHz processor. The percentage allocation can be varied depending on processor speed, but the GHz reservations must remain consistent and the number of vCPUs should also remain consistent with what Mitel recommends.
3. While there is a small difference in the measurements made for Network I/O and IOPS on Hyper-V, the numbers measured for ESXi generally apply and can be used as a reference when deploying Mitel applications on Hyper-V. See Table 8, "VMware required resource reservation and allocation," on page 24.
4. Hyperthreading is recommended for optimal performance.

## Resource dimensioning

You must have a minimum of 2 GB of memory allocated for the Hyper-V Hypervisor. Refer to the Hyper-V documentation on the Microsoft web site. Refer to <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hh831531.aspx>.



**CAUTION: You must maintain CPU Headroom of 30% over the peak load to guarantee service level agreement (SLA) performance.**

### Resource sharing guidelines

One of the major advantages of virtualization is that you can co-locate multiple VMs on one host server.

Because most of Mitel's virtual applications provide real-time voice, the customer will experience voice quality issues if insufficient CPU resources are allocated. Hyper-V uses priorities to guarantee that the specified amount of the resource (CPU cycles and memory) is always available to the VM, regardless of the needs of other VMs sharing the resource.

Set the CPU priority to **High** for the voice-sensitive Mitel applications. Lower settings can be used for the other applications.

### *Dynamic memory support*

Dynamic memory is not supported for Mitel Virtual Appliances. Mitel Virtual Appliances are 32-bit machines and Dynamic memory works only on 64-bit machines.

Assign the amount of Start up Memory from Table 15, "Hyper-V resource requirements," on page 51 and make sure Dynamic memory is not selected.

### Clock Sync

The VM guest must not do clock sync with both NTP and sync-to-host. Turn off one of them.

### Keep host NIC driver up-to-date

The host NIC driver should be up to date. NIC Teaming should be used and Virtual Machine Queue (VMQ) should be enabled.

### Product-specific guidelines

For additional product-specific restrictions and requirements, see the Mitel Engineering Guidelines for each product. The Engineering Guidelines also list limits, requirements, and recommendations related to:

- I/O considerations, including effects on performance
- Power conservation
- Security

**Table 16: Engineering Guidelines documents for Mitel virtual applications**

| MITEL PRODUCT                                | ENGINEERING GUIDELINES                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MiVoice Business Virtual                     | <i>Engineering Guidelines for Industry Standard Servers (ISS) and MiVoice Business Virtual,</i> |
| MiCollab Virtual                             | <i>MiCollab Engineering Guidelines</i>                                                          |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual (MBG Virtual) | <i>MiVoice Border Gateway Engineering Guidelines</i>                                            |



**Table 16: Engineering Guidelines documents for Mitel virtual applications**

| <b>MITEL PRODUCT</b>                             | <b>ENGINEERING GUIDELINES</b>                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MiCollab Client Virtual                          | <i>MiCollab Client Engineering Guidelines</i>                                  |
| Virtual NuPoint Unified Messaging<br>vNupoint UM | <i>NuPoint Engineering Guidelines</i><br><i>NuPoint Technician's Handbook.</i> |
| MiVoice Business Express                         | <i>MiVoice Business Express Deployment Guide</i>                               |

## Installing and upgrading on Hyper-V

Deploying Hyper-V involves creating a Virtual Machine (VM) with the correct resource allocation to support the installation of the particular Mitel virtual application. This section provides instructions for creating the Hyper-V virtual machine on which you can install the Mitel virtual applications. For detailed installation instructions, refer to the product documentation.

The supported Mitel virtual applications are:

- MiVoice Business Virtual
- MiCollab Virtual
- MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual
- NuPoint Unified Communications Virtual
- MiCollab Client Virtual
- MiContact Center



**Note:** When choosing the license type to purchase, select the virtual license, but installation is manual. As with installation on the Industry Standard Server (ISS), you install MSL, and then the virtual appliance.

The custom features to configure during the VM creation are:

- Name the Hyper-V virtual machine (VM).
- Set **Virtual Machine Type** to **Generation 1**.
- Assign a Memory allocation to match the Mitel vApp requirements. See [Table 15, "Hyper-V resource requirements,"](#) on page 51.
- Configure an additional NIC if the Mitel application is being deployed in server-gateway mode. See [Table 14](#) for more information.
- Configure appropriate networking.
- Connect Virtual Hard Disk (fixed and correct size).

After creating the Hyper-V VM, follow the physical installation procedures for the particular Mitel application. Refer to the documentation for the Mitel product you are installing for detailed instructions.



**Note:** Hyper-V VMs running the MSL OS do NOT support the connection of USB drives directly to the OS. This means that in Mitel virtual application installations such as MiCollab Virtual, you cannot scan for attached ISOs on a USB drive.



**CAUTION:** Make sure that, while installing Windows Server 2012-R2 on the host system, no USB drives are plugged in, either externally or internally. If there are USB drives present, the installation fails with a "partition error" as it tries to install the operating system on the USB device.

## Installing Mitel virtual applications on Hyper-V virtual machines

Installing Mitel applications in the Hyper-V environment is similar to installing on physical server, with the additional preliminary step of creating a suitable virtual machine for the application. You must add the appropriate virtual devices and set the correct resource dimensioning. See Table 15, “Hyper-V resource requirements,” on page 51.

Installing the Mitel application on Hyper-V is a three step process:

- Create the virtual environment
- Install and configure Mitel Standard Linux (MSL) on the virtual machine.
- Install the Mitel application by mounting the ISO images from a network drive, installing the software from CD/DVD, or for some applications, installing from the Blades panel. (Applies to MiCollab and NuPoint UM.)



**Note:** When choosing the license type to purchase, select the virtual license, but installation is manual. As with installation on the Industry Standard Server (ISS), you install MSL, and then the virtual appliance.

**Table 17: Installation parameters for Hyper-V**

| SETTINGS                 | POSSIBLE CHOICES                                                                                                        | SUPPORTED VALUES FOR MITEL VIRTUAL APPLICATIONS |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Hyper-V version          |                                                                                                                         | Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2                |
| Hyper-V hardware version | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Generation 1</li> <li>• Generation 2</li> </ul>                                | Generation 1                                    |
| Storage controller type  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IDE</li> <li>• SCSI</li> </ul>                                                 | IDE                                             |
| Virtual hard disk format | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VHD</li> <li>• VHDX</li> </ul>                                                 | VHDX                                            |
| Virtual hard disk type   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dynamically Expanding</li> <li>• Fixed Size</li> <li>• Differencing</li> </ul> | Fixed Size                                      |
| Network driver           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Network Adapter</li> <li>• Network Adapter (Legacy)</li> </ul>                 | Network Adapter                                 |

### Create the virtual environment

When configuring the virtual environment, the operating system should be set as **CentOS Linux 6 (32 bit)**. The Guest Hardware should be configured with the number of processors, amount of memory and disk size as specified in Table 15 on page 51 and the Engineering Guidelines for the application being deployed. The disk should be added to the **IDE Device**.

The CPU priority choices are **High**, **Medium**, **Low**, and **Custom**. Set the CPU priority to **High** for the voice-sensitive Mitel applications. Lower settings can be used for the other applications.

Before starting the machine (**Action > Start**) and before MSL is installed, you must modify the Virtual Machine (in **Settings**) to match [Table 15](#) for the specific product you are installing. This is a mandatory step.

Install and configure Mitel Standard Linux on the virtual machine

Refer to *Mitel Standard Linux Installation and Administration Guide*, available on Mitel OnLine.

Install the Mitel application

Installing Mitel virtual applications in Hyper-V is very similar to installing on a physical server. For Hyper-V installations, you use the same MSL and application ISO images as for installing during the physical procedures, but you must still purchase the virtual version of the license for the Mitel products.

Refer to the installation documentation for the specific Mitel product on Mitel OnLine for detailed instructions for installing the appliance on a physical server.

After installation is complete, the Mitel virtual solutions for Hyper-V must maintain online connectivity to the AMC and are subject to the same Sync Expiry rules in place for vSphere-based deployments.

## Upgrading Mitel applications on Hyper-V

Mitel applications running on Hyper-V are installed from the ISO disk image similar to those used when installing MSL and applications on physical servers. At this time, Mitel does not offer pre-installed disk images similar to the OVA files provided for VMware installations. The upgrade choices are similar to the choices available for physical servers.

Because there is no pre-installed disk image option as there is for VMware installations, any changes to the configuration of the virtual applications such as revised resource requirements must be made manually.

As is done for physical server deployments, you will typically need to upgrade MSL and the application together. Refer to the Installation and Maintenance Guides and Release Notes for product-specific guidance.

Upgrade backup/restore variants

There are a couple of upgrade variants that do not exist for physical servers, to ensure that you can revert to your starting place if problems occur in the upgrade process.

- Before beginning the upgrade, you clone the virtual machine (VM). Then you begin the upgrade on a copy of the VM. The old VM can be kept in a shut-down state until the new, upgraded virtual application is verified to be working properly. In the event of a problem with the new virtual application, the old virtual application can be powered up in seconds and be back in service, exactly as it was before the upgrade was started.
- Alternatively, you can take a snapshot before beginning the upgrade process. Use of the Hyper-V snapshot is recommended only for use during a system upgrade, and only when the VM is powered down. You can take a snapshot before starting the upgrade, when the system is out of service. If there is a problem with the upgrade, you can revert to the snapshot

to restore the appliance to service. After the upgrade is complete and verified, you must remove the snapshot. Removing the snapshot ensures adequate performance for voice-intensive Mitel virtual applications.

### Supported upgrade methods

The two supported upgrade methods are:

- Blade upgrade method

Use this upgrade method for minor release and Service Pack releases.

- Fresh Install/Restore method

Use this upgrade method for major release , or if indicated in the product release notes.

#### Blade upgrade method:

1. Back up the existing version, using the product-specific backup method. Also see [“Upgrade backup/restore variants” on page 58](#).
2. Apply the appropriate upgrade license, at the AMC, to the existing ARID for the virtual application. Synchronize with the AMC.
3. For MiCollab, select **Upgrade MiCollab** from the server console.
4. For other applications, start the upgrade from the Blades panel in the server manager.
5. After the upgrade, ensure that your virtual machine has the resources required for the new release, as appropriate for your environment.
6. After the upgrade is complete, and the first AMC synchronization has occurred, verify that the upgraded licenses have been correctly applied.

#### Fresh install/Restore method:

1. Back up the existing version, using the product-specific backup method. Also see [“Upgrade backup/restore variants” on page 58](#).
2. Apply the appropriate upgrade license, at the AMC, to the existing ARID for the virtual application. Synchronize with the AMC.
3. Create a new virtual machine.
4. Configure your virtual machine, ensuring that your virtual machine has the resources required for the new release, as appropriate for your environment. See [Table 15 on page 51](#) and [Table 17 on page 57](#).
5. Install MSL from an ISO image.
6. Restore the backup data. The installation process prompts you for the name of the backup file to restore.
7. Install the Mitel Application Blades either from ISO images or download from the AMC as documented in the Mitel application-specific Installation and Maintenance Guide.

8. After the first AMC synchronization has occurred, verify that the upgraded licenses have been correctly applied.

### Hyper-V software and versions

The only supported versions of Hyper-V are:

- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Hyper-V Server 2012 R2

Linux Integration Services allows Hyper-V to interact with the Mitel guest VM. This allows operations such as shutting down the VM from Hyper-V. Microsoft has provided the software for the Linux Integration Services to the open source communities.

The drivers necessary for Linux Integration Services are included in MSL (introduced in MSL 10.0). It is not necessary to add another Mitel Blade to get these components. Do not attempt to upgrade these components yourself. Please refer your questions to Mitel Support.

# Chapter 4

## MITEL APPLICATION MANAGEMENT CENTER (AMC)





## AMC licensing

Successful deployment of Mitel virtual appliances requires activation of Application Record IDs (ARID) for valid software licenses. Ideally, ARID activation is done on-line, when there is network connectivity between the Mitel Application Management Center (AMC) and the Mitel virtual appliance. When the Mitel AMC is not reachable on the network, connecting through a proxy is the next best solution.

This section includes the following topics:

- “About AMC licensing” on page 63
- “Supported networking configurations” on page 64
- “Specific appliance restrictions” on page 65
- “On-line licensing through a proxy” on page 65



**Note:** MiContact Center is not licensed through AMC. Refer to your Mitel sales representative.

### About AMC licensing

Mitel virtual appliances interact with the Mitel AMC for these operations:

- Activation

Every Mitel virtual appliance needs to activate its own ARID individually. This can be done on-line or off-line depending on what the virtual appliance supports.



**Note:** Licensing requirements and structure is application-specific, and may require virtualization-specific licenses. Refer to individual product release notes and installation documentation.

- Synchronization

Every Mitel virtual appliance must do its own AMC synchronization. On the MSL platform, AMC synchronization is set up for an automatic, periodic synchronization.

- Software upgrade

The requirements for software upgrade are different for the various virtual appliances. Some require new software and supporting files, which are not available off-line from the software DVD, to be downloaded on-line from the AMC.

When activating ARIDs, the activation process begins by gathering information about the platform. This includes identification of installed software and information uniquely identifying the virtual appliance. This information is sent to the Mitel AMC along with a license request. The Mitel AMC inspects the information and grants the virtual appliance a software license, assuming that the license has been purchased.

After a software license is obtained from the Mitel AMC, the virtual appliance verifies the validity of the license and enables or disables features, depending on what features are included in

the purchased license. The virtual appliance determines when a license inspection is complete and how to handle license violation conditions.

Software licenses granted by the AMC are time-constrained licenses. Every Mitel virtual appliance is required to periodically perform a license synchronization with the AMC. This ensures that software licenses are refreshed and up-to-date.

There must be a live connection from the Mitel virtual appliance to the Mitel AMC on the Internet, as discussed above, and this can also be accomplished through a proxy. (See [“On-line licensing through a proxy” on page 65.](#)) The MSL O/S in the Mitel virtual appliance automatically synchronizes its stored license information with the AMC periodically. Should this synchronization fail over a long period, the licenses become invalid. Each Mitel application handles license violation differently. Some will fail immediately, and some will continue for a short time.

The connection between the virtual appliance and the AMC requires an outbound, external connection to TCP port 22 at the AMC. The protocol used over the connection is SSH v2.

For customers who are not willing to open their firewall to this traffic from each individual Mitel virtual appliance in their network, a single proxy can be used. With this approach, the firewall allows outgoing AMC connections only between the AMC on the Internet and a single address in their LAN, the proxy. Any program or service that performs port-forwarding can be used to proxy Mitel licensing traffic.

### Supported networking configurations

There are a number of supported networking configurations in the enterprise environment. The network in which the Mitel virtual appliances are deployed may be:

- Completely open to the Internet:  
  
Since there is no firewall filtering network traffic between the AMC and the Mitel virtual appliances, licensing can be done on-line without restrictions. License requests and responses can flow through the Internet without any blockage. This is not the recommended setup in enterprise settings, however, and is considered suitable only for lab setups, due to exposure to Internet threats.
- Protected by an enterprise firewall and provisioned to allow Mitel licensing traffic:  
  
Mitel on-line licensing requires the firewall to allow outbound SSH network traffic (TCP port 22).
- Protected by an enterprise firewall and does not allow Mitel licensing traffic:  
  
If the firewall does not allow any licensing traffic, rather than opening ports for a number of virtual appliances in the enterprise, Mitel virtual appliances can obtain software licenses through a proxy. Using a proxy allows the firewall to have a port open for just one proxy, rather than having a port open to each virtual appliance. See [“On-line licensing through a proxy” on page 65.](#)

Wherever possible, direct on-line licensing is recommended. Every virtual appliance handles its own license activation and synchronization.

## Specific appliance restrictions

There are restrictions in licensing certain Mitel products that affect your activation and upgrade planning:

- **MiCollab Virtual:** Software upgrade requires a manifest file to be downloaded from the Mitel AMC, and this file is available only from on-line AMC sync. Because of this, software upgrade is possible only with on-line licensing. Online licensing and software upgrades can be done through a proxy.
- **NuPoint UM Virtual:** Software upgrade requires the newer software to be available locally as an ISO image or physical DVD. NuPoint UM Virtual does not support software blades download from the Mitel AMC due to the size of the blades. An updated software license must be present before NuPoint UM Virtual can be installed or upgraded.
- **vMCD/MiVoice Business Virtual:** Starting in MCD Release 6.0, MiVoice Business Virtual can act as a Designated License Manager (DLM), able to host license sharing for a group of MiVoice Business controllers.

In MCD Release 5.0, vMCD can run a License Manager that can participate in group license sharing, but cannot act as a DLM.

## On-line licensing through a proxy

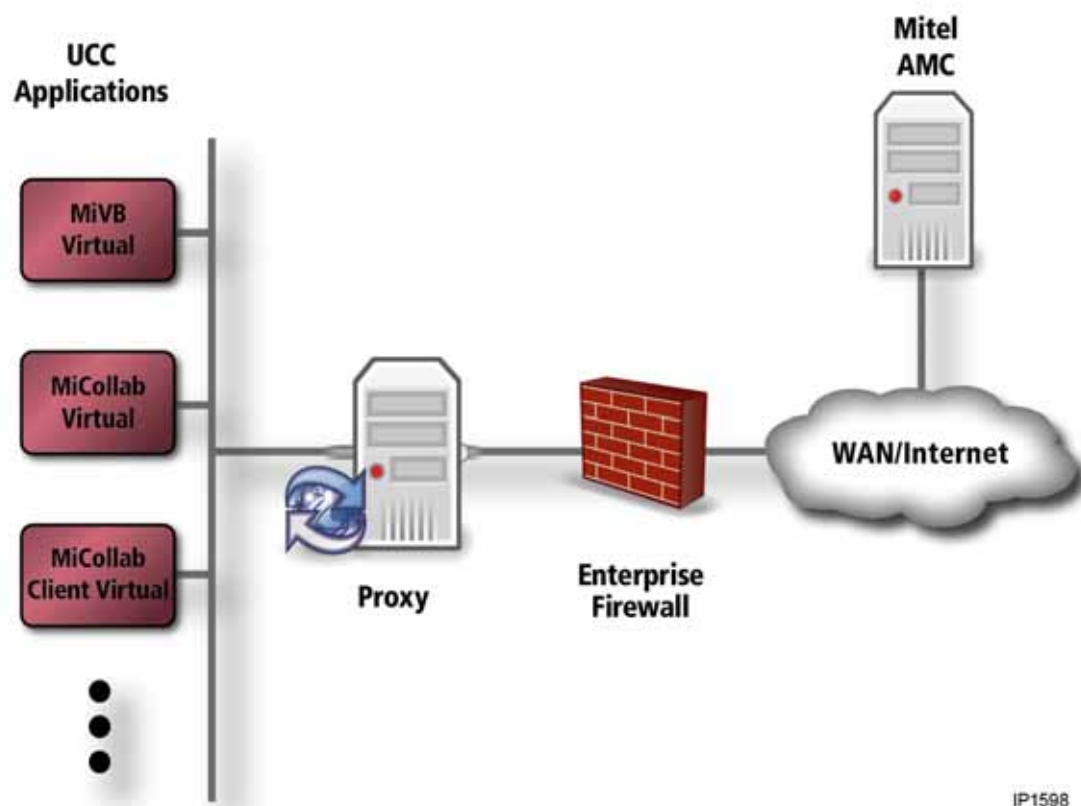
Licensing is handled by the Mitel Applications Management Center or AMC. Successful deployment of OIG requires activation of an Application Record ID, or ARID, which enables software licenses. Activation is usually done on-line when there is connectivity between the AMC and the server that is hosting the Mitel Standard Linux (MSL) software. Some data centers will not allow outbound SSH traffic. In these cases, connection can be established using a proxy.



**Note:** For Mitel Open Integration Gateway (OIG), there must also be a connection to the Mitel Certificate Server (MCS). For instructions in setting this up, see the *Mitel OIG Installation and Maintenance Guide*.

Any program or service that performs port forwarding can be used to proxy Mitel licensing traffic. Firewalls may need to be reconfigured with AMC-specific rules (i.e. allow SSH datagrams (Port 22) to pass through to the licensing proxy). If an enterprise proxy is already in place, you can configure it to handle licensing traffic (recommended). If there is no existing proxy, you must install one and configure it to bridge AMC traffic.

Depending on the specific proxy used, DMZ proxy deployment is also possible (not shown).



**Figure 5: Network topology with Mitel Licensing Proxy**

Any program, appliance or service that performs port forwarding can be used to proxy Mitel licensing traffic.

Depending on how the licensing proxy is deployed, the enterprise firewall may need to be re-configured with AMC-specific access rules. The enterprise firewall must allow SSH datagrams (port 22) to pass through to the licensing proxy.

The licensing proxy forwards outbound traffic from a port on its local interface to port 22 of the AMC using a random port on its WAN-facing interface. It also allows traffic returns from the AMC to the virtual appliances. If an enterprise proxy is already in place it is recommended that you configure your existing proxy to handle the AMC licensing traffic. If there is no existing proxy in your network, you will need to install and configure a new proxy to bridge the AMC traffic.

In a highly secured network, firewall policies are very restrictive. Proxies are often deployed in the DMZ to bridge controlled traffic between the WAN/Internet and LAN. The proxies and the traffic passing through are closely monitored for security purposes, and customers have often made very specific choices, both in proxies and in monitoring infrastructures.

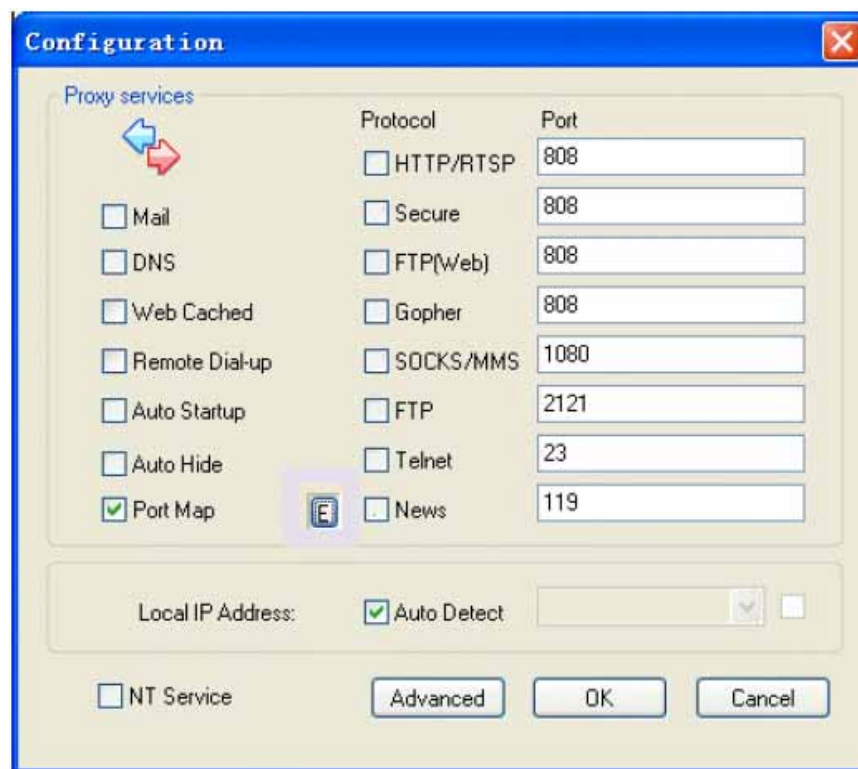
### Proxies that have been tested with AMC

This section lists some proxies that have been tested successfully for use as a Mitel licensing proxy. In all cases, the proxy should be installed and run on a platform that has connectivity to a LAN network (connecting to Mitel virtual appliances) and a WAN network (connecting to the

Internet). Security policies must be configured to allow SSH traffic from the LAN to the proxy and from the proxy to the WAN.

### *CCProxy for Microsoft Windows*

CCProxy is a commercial proxy server for the Windows platform. CCProxy can be used as a Mitel licensing proxy with the following configuration. Port 808 was used for illustration purposes.



**Figure 6: CCProxy: Enable Port Mapping**



Figure 7: CCProxy: Port Forward Setting Details

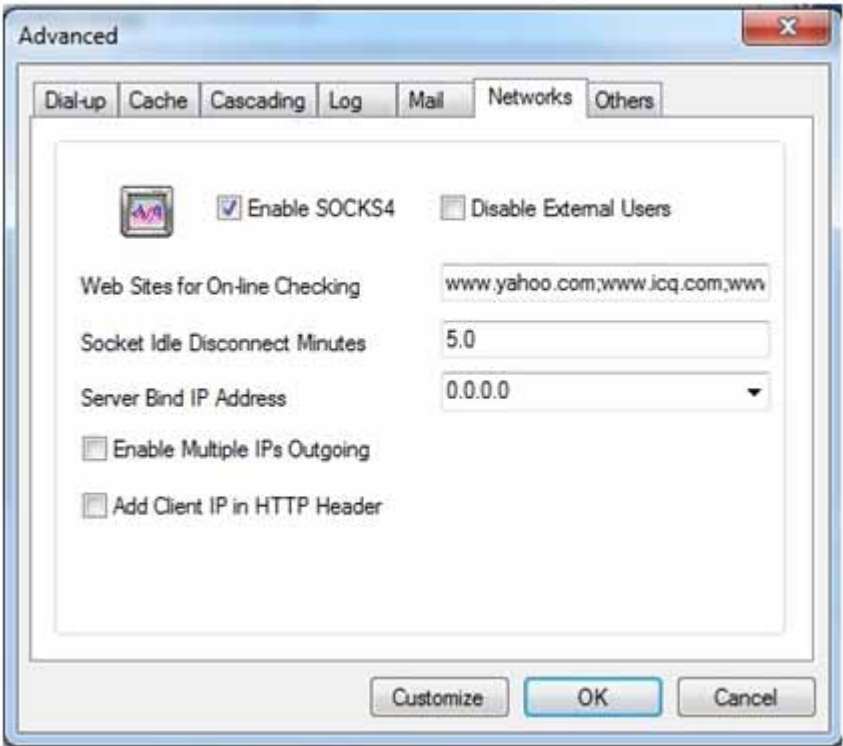
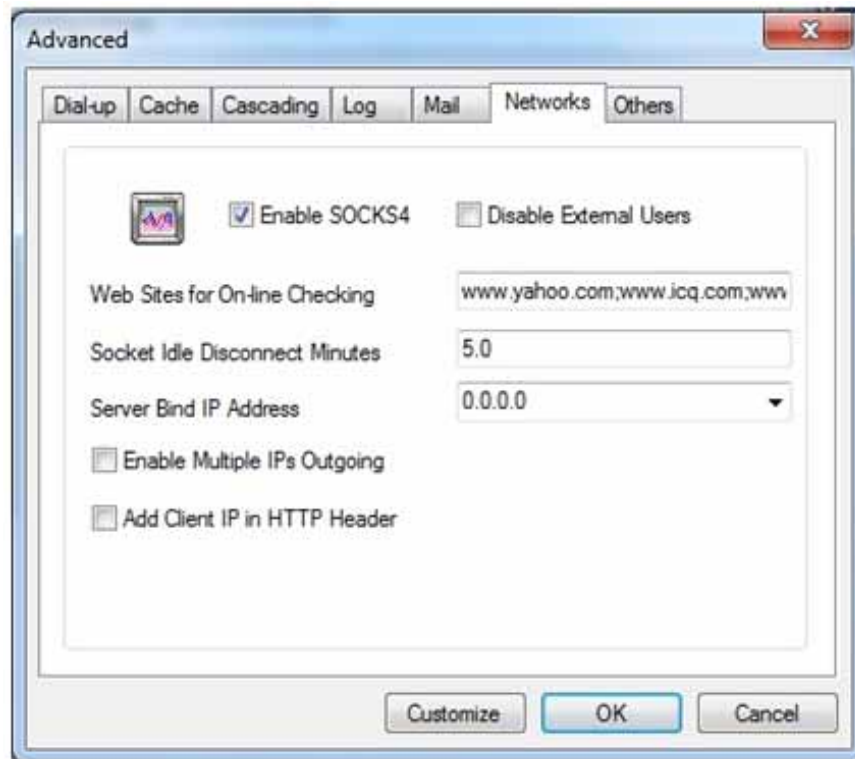


Figure 8: CCProxy: Enable SOCKS4

*Trivial Proxy for Microsoft Windows*

Trivial Proxy is offered as freeware for the Windows platform. It can be downloaded from [CNET](#). Install Trivial Proxy without the CNET add-ons and configure proxy as shown below. Port 808 was used for illustration purposes.



**Figure 9: Trivial Proxy Configuration Example**

### MSL Sync using Proxy

Figure 10 shows how to obtain software licensing through the licensing proxy. In the figure, 192.168.137.1 is the IP address of the LAN interface on the licensing proxy, and port 1808 is the TCP port the licensing proxy listens on.

**Mitel** | Mitel Standard Linux

**ServiceLink**  
Blades  
Status

**Administration**  
Backup  
View log files  
Event viewer  
System information  
System monitoring  
System users  
Shutdown or reconfigure

**Security**  
Remote access  
Local networks  
Port forwarding  
Web Server Certificate  
Certificate Management

**Configuration**  
Clustering  
E-mail settings  
DHCP  
Date and time  
Hostnames and addresses  
Domains

### Operation status report

Your server has now been deactivated from ServiceLink, and will no longer sync with the Applications Management Center. You may re-activate your server at any time by returning to the [Status](#) panel and entering your service account ID.

**NOTE: In order to re-activate the server afterwards using the same service account ID, you will have to clear the signature from the [Applications Management Center](#).**

In addition to the standard features of this server software, you can now take advantage of ServiceLink, an integrated suite of network-delivered services that enhance the security, reliability and functionality of your server. ServiceLink delivers critical system-management services including 24 x 7 monitoring and status reports, virus protection with automatic updates, point-and-click IPSEC Virtual Private Networks, guaranteed e-mail delivery and DNS services.

To read more about the benefits of ServiceLink, please visit <http://www.mitel.com/>

To activate ServiceLink, you will require a service account ID which can be obtained from your authorized reseller. If you have already obtained a service account ID, please enter that ID now.

If this server does not have Internet connectivity to the Mitel Application Management Center (AMC), you must use the offline license generation process. To do this, select the *Enable offline license generation* checkbox below and press the *Activate* button.

Service account ID:

Address of Mitel AMC or proxy (optional):

TCP port to use for AMC connection (optional):

Enable offline license generation: ☐

**Figure 10: Activate Application Record using an AMC Proxy**



**Note:** After a license has been activated using a licensing proxy, the same AMC proxy must be used for subsequent synchronizations with the AMC.  
The only way to change to a different AMC proxy in the MSL Server Manager is to deactivate the ARID, and then re-activate it.



# Chapter 5

## SECURITY IN MITEL/VMWARE VIRTUAL NETWORKS



## Security in Mitel VMware deployments

When setting up your network with virtual servers, security considerations are the same as for traditional servers, and all of the same security measures, including firewalls, DMZ, authentication, encryption, and SSL-protected connections, apply.

In addition, there are measures you can take specific to your virtualized environment; these are described in this chapter. For detailed VMware product information, see the VMware documentation.

### vCloud Networking and Security (vCNS) Overview

This section provides a brief overview of VMware's vCloud Networking and Security (vCNS) family of security products.



---

**Note:** vCNS 5.1 and above only, are supported for use with Mitel virtual appliances.

Security components of vCNS were formerly known as the VMware product suite.

Additional networking functionality is included in vCNS, but is not directly relevant to Mitel deployments, so it is not described or discussed here. Please refer to VMware documentation for details.

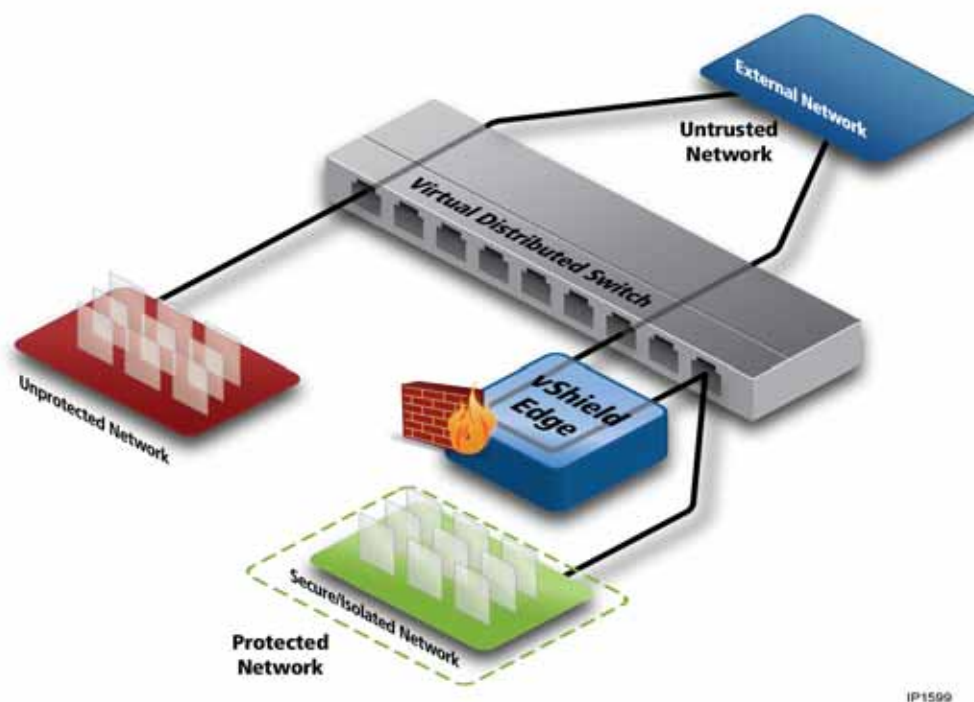
#### vShield Manager

vShield Manager provides centralized management for the other vCNS/vShield security products. One instance of vShield Manager is installed and configured for each vCenter in the overall environment.

vShield Manager is accessed through a plug-in to vCenter, which appears in the vSphere Client the administrator uses to manage the vCenter, or through a Web administration interface on the vShield Manager application.

#### vCNS

vCNS provides gateway services at the network edge. The basic architecture is similar to that of a NAT/Router in the physical world, as shown in [Figure 11](#) below.



**Figure 11: vCNS architecture**

vCNS is deployed as one or more virtual appliances within the virtual infrastructure. vCNS instances may be deployed between sections of the data center network, at the external facing edge of the data center network, in a virtual DMZ.

Capabilities include:

- Network Address Translation (NAT) with external and internal address mapping capability, inbound and outbound access rules, and so on.
- Firewall, with 5-tuple inbound and outbound access rules.
- vCNS High Availability, with two vCNS instances in active-passive configuration, allowing stateful fail-over (vCNS Advanced only).



**Note:** While the overall service will recover, there could be some delay to vCNS fail-over, so there would be loss of voice or other media flows for that period and signaling delays as well.



**Note:** This fail-over of vCNS instances is not equal or equivalent to the vSphere HA feature, which provides automatic restart of VMs in case of VM failure, or failure of the host on which the VM resides.

- vCNS is available at different performance levels: Compact, Large and X-Large, allowing scaling up of the solution. In-place vCNS appliances can be transformed to the larger capacity configuration, but cannot be changed to a lower performance level.

- Site-to-site VPN.
- Load balancing across multiple external-facing interfaces.
- DHCP address configuration on the internal-facing network.
- DNS relay service for the internal network.

vCNS-based security has several benefits:

- Simple, familiar VLAN-based model, allowing administrators to easily understand their security topology, and configure it.
- Using NAT capabilities, different tenant “internal” networks can be made identical to each other (or nearly so), allowing for easy mass deployment of multiple customers in a hosted environment, with internal addressing pre-determined.
- Using vCNS High Availability feature, reduced service interruption in the case of failure of the (currently) active vCNS appliance.

vCNS, on its own, does not provide protection against network-internal threats (threats from inside the NAT boundary). Nor does it provide isolation of network-internal concerns, as may be required for regulatory compliance (like Sarbanes Oxley or Payment Card Industry (PCI) Data Security Standard, for example).

## vCNS Security Topologies

The following subsections describe five vCNS-based security topologies, including configuration details, recommended usage, and pros and cons of each. Each of these topologies uses the vShield component of vCNS.

Many other approaches are feasible, including use of other vCNS components such as vShield App, depending on overall solution requirements and architecture. The topologies described in the following sections have been tested and verified, so they are supported and recommended.

### General Best Practices

This section describes general considerations, applicable across all security topologies. The following best practices should be observed for all of the topologies described in this chapter.

- Use of VMware distributed virtual switching (dvSwitch) as the foundation of networking is strongly recommended. Use of dvSwitches greatly simplifies network configuration, and ensures consistency and correctness. dvSwitch is also a requirement for several vCNS features.
- Where UCC traffic flows through a vCNS, always deploy the Edge appliance in at least the Large profile. (Big UCC systems may require Extra Large.) This is to ensure adequate throughput to maintain high voice quality. This applies to topologies 2 - 4 described below, or any similar topology used.

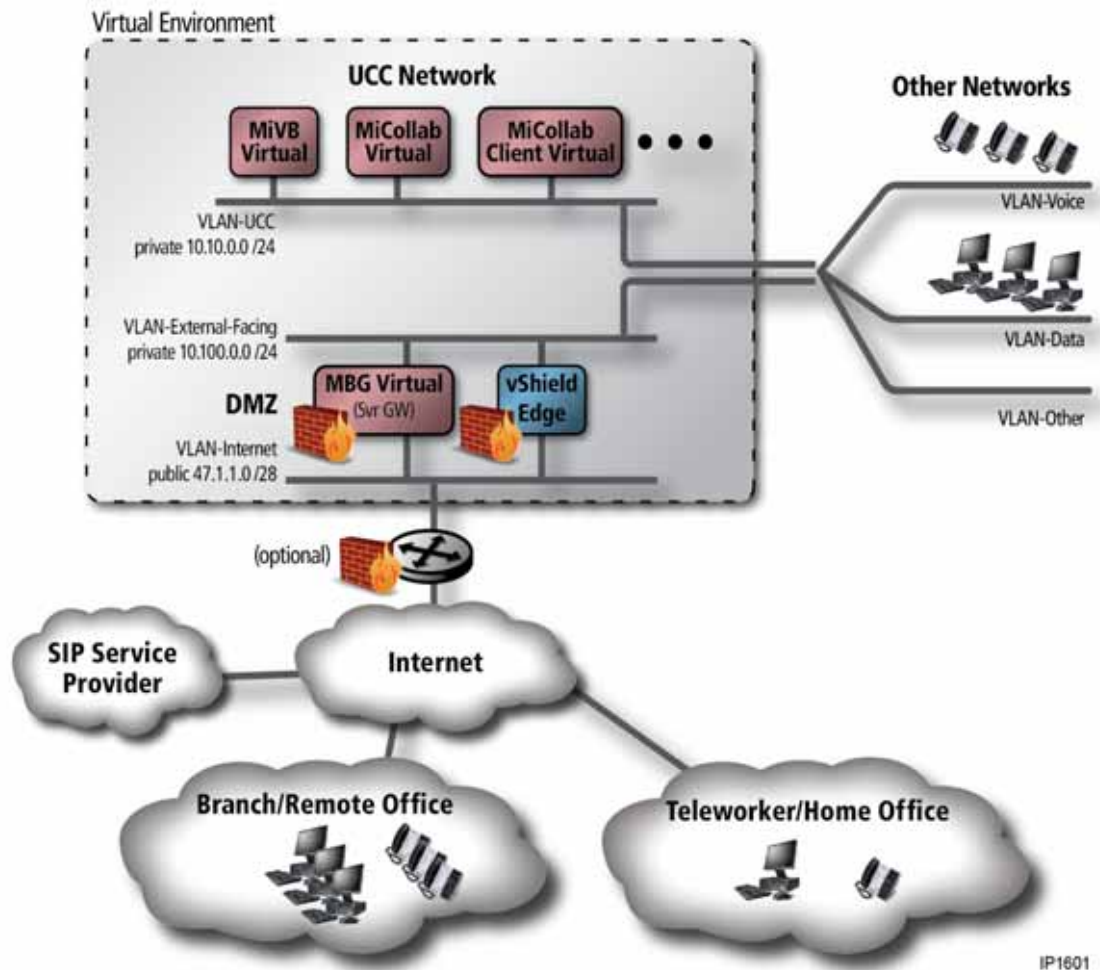


**Note:** Due to the possibility of reduced voice quality, use of vCNS Compact sizing is not recommended or supported, except where no UCC traffic will flow through the vCNS appliance.

- Deploy all security related components (vCNS, MBG Virtual, MiVoice Business Express) on clusters with vSphere DRS/vMotion and HA enabled. Security related components should be configured in HA for high restart priority.
- Enable vCNS High Availability on all vCNS appliances. This ensures maximum continuity should one of the active-passive pair of Edge appliances fail. Note that this feature is not the same as vSphere HA, and that there are some serious limitations for VoIP applications. See “vCNS” on page 73 for more information.

### Topology 1: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MBG Virtual Parallel with vCNS

Figure 12 shows a simple private cloud network topology, using vCNS as the general access control mechanism in the DMZ, between Internet (or other untrusted network) and the enterprise-internal network applications. In this topology, MBG Virtual is placed in parallel to vCNS, and is used for UCC-specific access and NAT handling.



**Figure 12: Private Cloud, vCNS Controlled - Parallel**

In the diagrams, VMware elements are shown in blue shading; Mitel elements are shown in red shading.

This topology is suitable for enterprise private cloud type deployments, where the enterprise administrator has full control over their network and virtual infrastructure. It is assumed that network-internal threats and strong isolation between internal networks are not major concerns.

Normally, the virtualized infrastructure would be on premise (in the corporate data center). However, it may be feasible for the infrastructure to be hosted externally by a provider as an IaaS deployment, using a VLAN technology such as MPLS to extend the enterprise network to inside the host data center. vCNS site-to-site VPN capability could also be used. Such an extended enterprise network would connect on the “internal side” nominally at the same place MBG Virtual internal interface connects (VLAN-External-Facing in Figure 12).

### Topology description

The vCNS controlled Private Cloud - Parallel topology consists of the following elements:

- Some number of remote networks, such as branch or home offices and/or Teleworker users. These access the private cloud across Internet (or other non-trusted network). These are typically protected by a NAT/firewall device (not shown). All endpoints in these remote networks are assumed to be in Teleworker mode of operation.
- Internet public network.
- Access Router, providing access to and from the untrusted network, usually the Internet.
- (Optional) In practice, there may also be a physical firewall in the Internet path, behind or as part of the access router. This is quite likely in large enterprise case, for protection of non-virtualized resources inside the enterprise network.
- DMZ network layer, where machines meant to span between untrusted and trusted network domains reside. The external side of the DMZ attaches to the untrusted network (VLAN-Internet in the diagram), typically using public IP addressing. The internal side attaches to the trusted internal network (VLAN-External-Facing in the figure). Machines in this layer are virtualized, and may be running on the same host servers as other non-DMZ VMs. Access to the DMZ VM vNICs is strictly controlled through the use of VLANs.
- MBG Virtual, residing in the DMZ network layer, and configured in server-gateway mode, provides firewall, NAT handling, and access, specifically to and from the Mitel UC applications (MiVoice Business Virtual, and so on). The MBG Virtual may also be used for the SIP Service Provider gateway function (SBC), if required. The external-facing “WAN” interface of the MBG Virtual attaches to the external untrusted network (VLAN-Internet), and the internal-facing LAN interface attaches to the internal trusted network (VLAN-External-Facing).
- vCNS, residing in the DMZ network layer, and providing NAT/firewall service to general purpose VMs in the overall solution. The external-facing interface of the vCNS instance attaches to the external untrusted network (VLAN-Internet), and the internal-facing interface attaches to the internal trusted network (VLAN-External-Facing).



**Note:** In this topology, vCNS is not directly required to support Mitel UCC applications. vCNS and MBG do not directly interact, only co-exist. If only UCC applications are included in the virtual environment, the vCNS component is not required.

- UCC applications network containing the Mitel UCC application VAs, other than the MBG Virtual gateway (VLAN-UCC in the diagram). These are configured as they would be in a traditional LAN environment. Note that MBG Virtual may still be present, if required for internal services such as Secure Recording Connector (SRC).
- One or more “Other” internal networks. In the private cloud case, this is likely to include separate networks for end user devices such as PCs, a voice network for VoIP devices such as IP Phones, and possibly several more. Some of these other networks may exist inside the virtual infrastructure (rather than external to it, as shown here). Devices used to manage the virtual infrastructure (administrator PCs, for example) may reside on one or more of these networks.

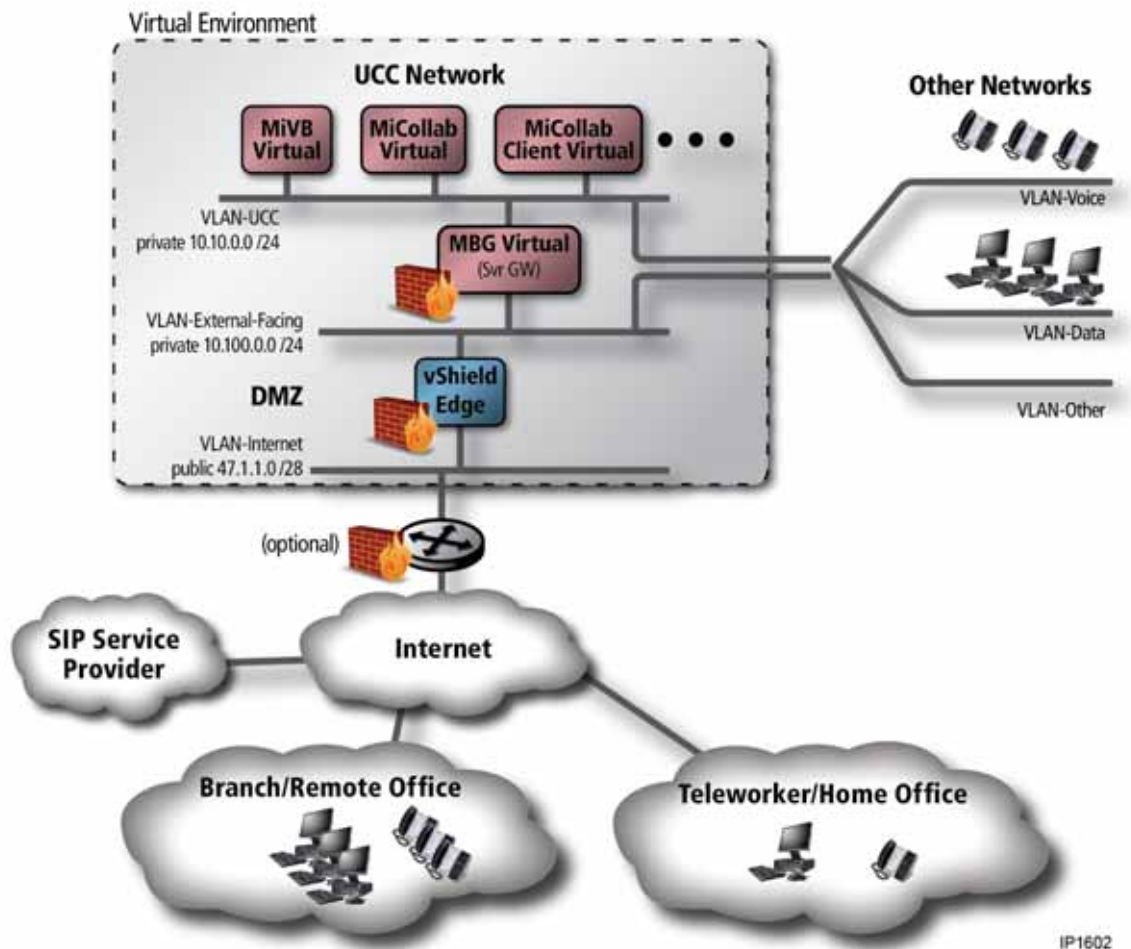


For information about configuring vCloud Networking and Security (formerly vShield Edge), MBG Virtual, the IP Phones (and other VoIP end-points), and the external firewall (if one exists in the deployment), see Table 19, “Network component configuration by Topology type,” on page 91.

For a comparison of the advantages and disadvantages, and the recommended applications of each topology, see Table 18, “Topology comparisons and recommendations,” on page 88.

## Topology 2: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MBG Virtual Behind vCNS

Figure 13 shows a simple private cloud network topology, using vCNS as the general access control mechanism in the DMZ, between Internet (or other untrusted network) and the enterprise-internal network applications. In this topology, MBG Virtual is placed behind vCNS, in series with the vCNS virtual firewall/NAT, and is used for UCC-specific access and NAT handling. In this topology, MBG Virtual provides an additional security layer controlling access to UCC applications.



**Figure 13: Private Cloud, vCNS Controlled - Series**

This topology is similar to the topology described in the previous section, but moves the MBG Virtual function “inside”, behind the vCNS NAT/firewall.

This topology is appropriate for enterprise private cloud type deployments, where the enterprise administrator has full control over their network and virtual infrastructure. It is assumed that network-internal threats and strong isolation between internal networks other than UCC are not major concerns. Additional layering of security is provided for UCC applications, so security from internal threats on UCC is stronger.

### Topology description

The vCNS controlled Private Cloud - Series topology consists of the following elements. Only elements different from the previous topology are described here.

- MBG is moved to the internal network, behind vCNS and the (optional) physical firewall. MBG Virtual is in series with the vCNS NAT/firewall.
- MBG Virtual is configured in Server-Gateway mode, providing firewall, NAT handling and access to and from the Mitel UCC applications (MiVoice Business Virtual, and so on).
- The MBG Virtual may also be used for SIP Service Provider gateway function, if required.
- The external-facing WAN interface of the MBG Virtual attaches to an internal trusted network (VLAN-External-Facing in the diagram), and the internal-facing LAN interface attaches to a different internal trusted network (VLAN-UCC in the diagram).
- vCNS, residing in the DMZ network layer, provides address and port mapping for Mitel UCC applications via MBG Virtual, as well as provides NAT/firewall service to general purpose VMs in the overall solution.
- Specific vCNS configuration is required to support Mitel UCC/MBG Virtual interface.

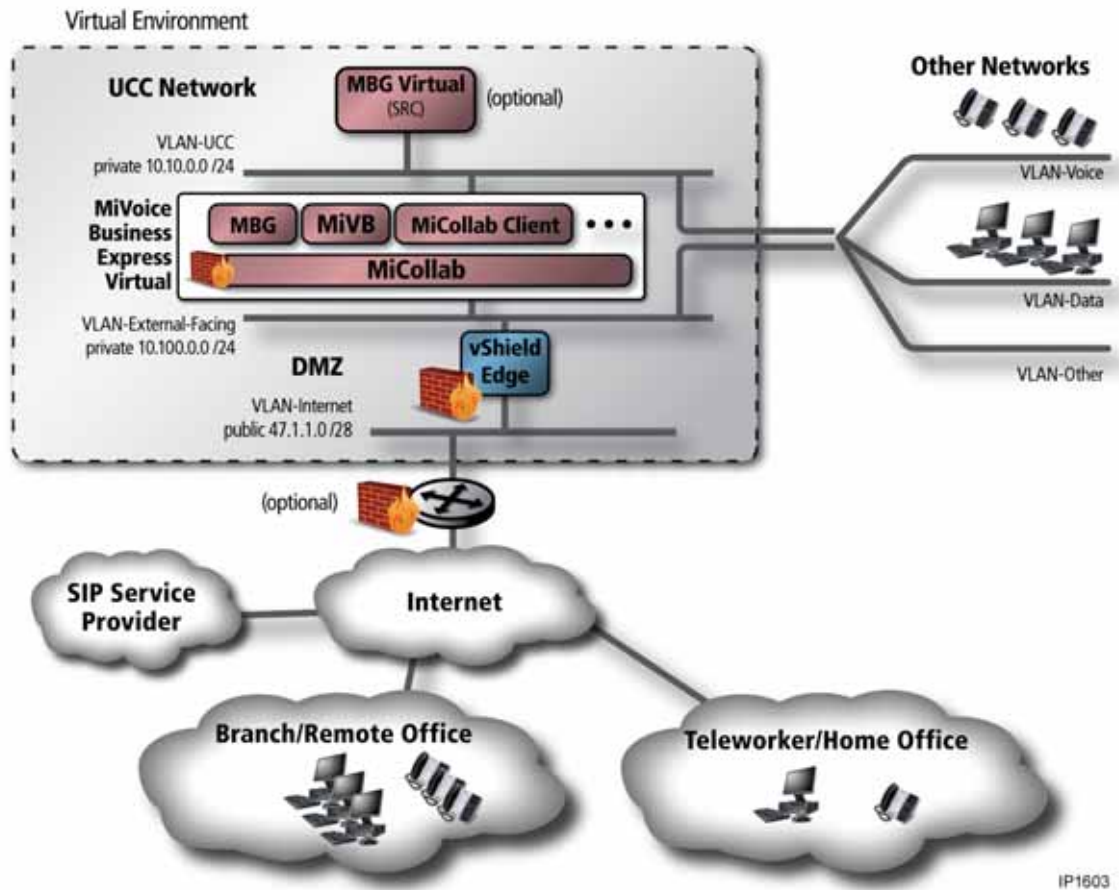
For information about configuring vCloud Networking and Security (vCNS), MBG Virtual, the IP Phones (and other VoIP end-points), and the external firewall (if one exists in the deployment), see Table 19, “Network component configuration by Topology type,” on page 91.

For a comparison of the advantages and disadvantages, and the recommended applications of each topology, see Table 18, “Topology comparisons and recommendations,” on page 88.

## Topology 3: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MiVoice Business Express

Figure 14 adds deployment of MiVoice Business Express, and from the security perspective is really a direct extension of the previous topology. vCNS is used as the general access control mechanism in the DMZ, between Internet (or other untrusted network) and the enterprise-internal network applications. In this topology, MiVoice Business Express is placed behind vCNS, in series with the vCNS virtual firewall/NAT. The MBG component of MiVoice Business Express, which is configured in Server-Gateway mode, provides for UCC-specific access and NAT handling. In this topology, the MBG component adds an additional security layer controlling access to UCC applications.

For MiVoice Business Express, two IP addresses are used on each of the external-facing connections (VLAN-External-Facing), and on the internal-facing connection (VLAN-UCC). This is required for MSL/MiCollab/MBG external addressing and for MCA proxy external address, as well as the MSL/MiCollab/MBG internal address, and the MiVoice Business internal address.



**Figure 14: Private Cloud, vCNS Controlled - MiVoice Business Express**

This topology is suitable for enterprise private cloud deployments, where the enterprise administrator has full control over the network and virtual infrastructure. It is assumed that network-internal threats, and strong isolation between internal networks other than UCC are not major concerns. Additional layering of security is provided for UCC applications by the MBG component of MiVoice Business Express, so security from internal threats on UCC is stronger than in the previous two topologies described. In addition, use of MiVoice Business Express simplifies deployment.

#### Topology description

The vCNS controlled Private Cloud - MiVoice Business Express topology consists of the following elements. Only elements different from the previous topologies are described here.

- MiVoice Business Express is deployed between the trusted side of the DMZ and the UCC network. In effect, the MBG component of MiVoice Business Express is in series with the vCNS NAT/firewall.
- In MiVoice Business Express, the MBG component is configured in Server-Gateway mode, providing firewall, NAT handling and access to and from the other MiCollab applications.

- The MBG component may also be used for SIP Service Provider gateway function, if required.
- The external-facing WAN interface of MiVoice Business Express attaches to an internal trusted network (VLAN-External-Facing in the diagram), and the internal-facing LAN interface attaches to a different internal trusted network (VLAN-UCC in the diagram). Two fixed IP addresses are assigned to each interface.
- vCNS, residing in the DMZ network layer, provides address and port mapping for MiVoice Business Express, and provides NAT/firewall service to general purpose VMs in the overall solution. For MiVoice Business Express, two externally visible fixed IP addresses are mapped to MiVoice Business Express WAN addresses.

For information about configuring vCNS, MBG Virtual, the IP Phones (and other VoIP end-points), and the external firewall (if one exists in the deployment), see [Table 19, “Network component configuration by Topology type,”](#) on page 91.

For a comparison of the advantages and disadvantages, and the recommended applications of each topology, see [Table 18, “Topology comparisons and recommendations,”](#) on page 88.

### Topology 4: vCNS Based Public Cloud

[Figure 15](#) shows a public cloud network topology, using vCNS as the access control mechanism for each tenant/customer in the DMZ, between Internet (or other untrusted network) and the customer networks in the hosting environment. vCNS also provides isolation between customers. MBG Virtual, in series with each customer's vCNS, performs the NAT traversal proxy function for the Mitel UCC applications.

## vShield Edge Public Cloud

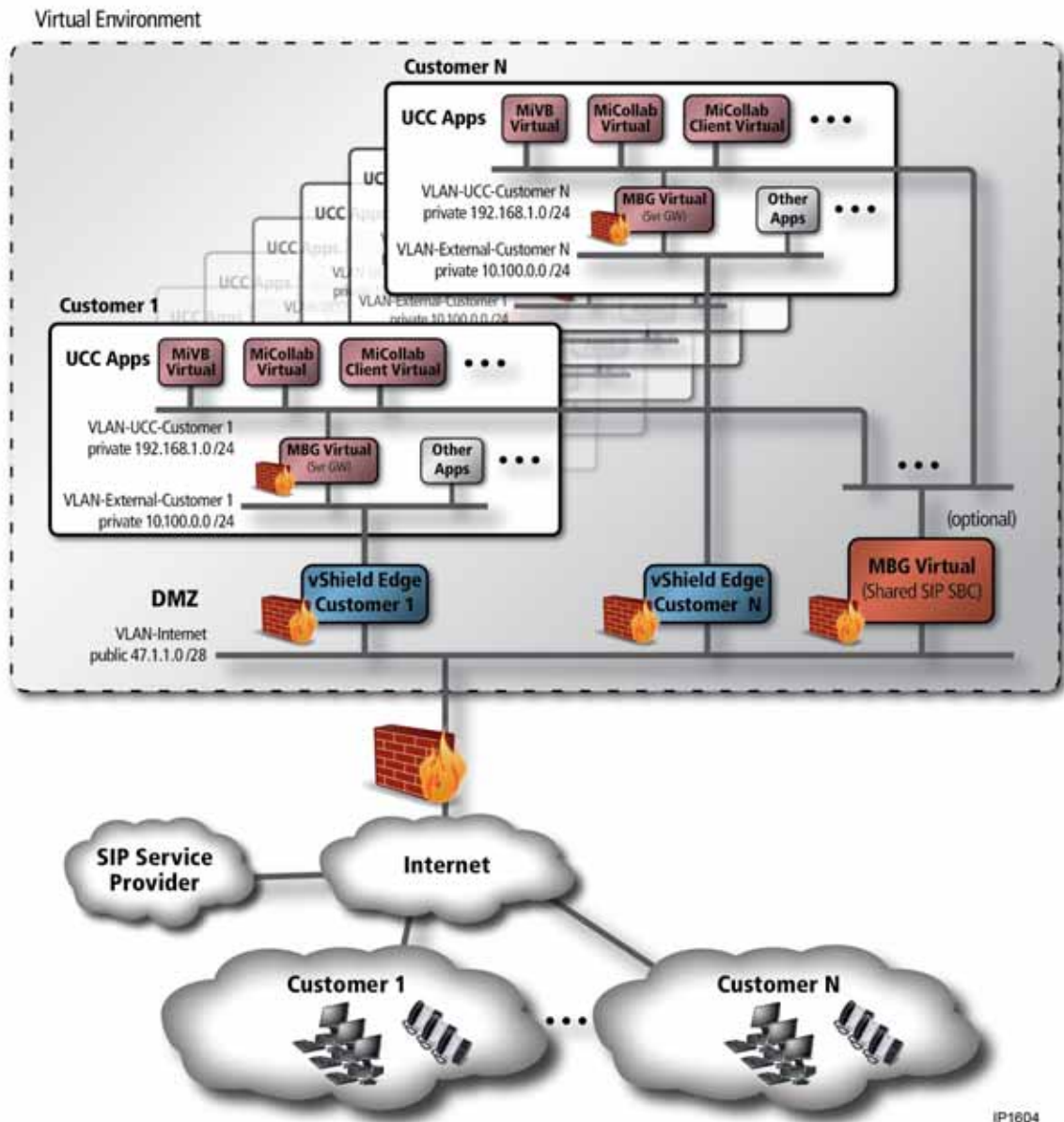


Figure 15: Public Cloud, vCNS Controlled

This topology is well-suited for hosted multi-tenant public cloud deployments, providing UCC as a service (UCaaS), possibly along with other services. The hosting provider has full control over their network and virtual infrastructure; however the customer is assumed to have limited control. It is assumed that network-internal threats within a particular customer are not a concern. Strong isolation between customers is a very high concern.



**Note:** This topology maps very closely to VMware vCloud Director NAT routed Organization Networks, where deployment of vCNS appliances to isolate customer networks is automated by vCloud Director. See [“vCloud Director Support” on page 95](#).

If only UCC applications are being hosted, then the vCNS layer is not required for UCC functionality. (It may, however, be required by the host provider for other reasons.) In this case the MBG Virtual could be connected directly to the Internet, as a normal Server Gateway deployment, without vCNS in the path. This variation is not discussed in detail in this guide; refer to the MiVoice Border Gateway documentation for more information.

### Topology description

The Public Cloud / vCNS topology is largely an expansion of the previous topology ([“Topology 2: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MBG Virtual Behind vCNS” on page 79](#)), by completely replicating the topology across multiple customers. vCNS is used to isolate customers from each other. Within each customer network, MBG Virtual performs the NAT traversal proxy function, as well as providing an additional firewall layer in front of the UCC applications.

Optionally, a shared MBG Virtual (or cluster of MBG Virtual instances), acting as SIP Proxy/Session Border Controller (SBC) for multiple customers, is also introduced. Consolidation of capacity is provided for multiple customers. All trunks come in to one location, and calls are routed to the appropriate customer's UCC environment (MiVoice Business Virtual or MiVoice Business Express). This has potential advantages, but at the cost of forcing customer networks to be not completely identical to each other.

- May enable reduction of total resource reservations across the overall hosting solution to provide the SIP SBC services across multiple customers, due to statistical multiplexing (peak loads for multiple customers are unlikely to occur at the same time). It could also reduce the resource reservations required per customer MBG instance, while creating a reservation for the shared MBG function that is lower than the total—reduced across the customer base. This potential advantage can be expected to be higher where there are large numbers of smaller end customers involved.
- Potential cost savings if SIP services are purchased in bulk by the hosting provider.
- Increased simplicity for bandwidth management. All SIP trunking becomes a single bandwidth management zone.
- Increased resiliency of the SIP SBC functions, using MBG clustering.

In a public cloud environment, it can be assumed that an external firewall will usually also be in place, outside of the virtualized environment.

The Public Cloud/vCNS topology consists of the following elements.

- Each individual customer is provided one or more separate external network addresses (Internet addresses), separated from other customers, from within the public Internet address range operated by the hosting company (VLAN-Internet). Each customer's IP addresses are configured as the external facing interface(s) of the customer-specific vCNS instance.
- Since each customer network is isolated by vCNS, internal addressing is allowed to be identical, or overlapped, between customers. This allows Mitel (and other) components



within the customer network to be pre-configured with respect to addressing when the customer is deployed.

- Optionally, a shared MBG Virtual (or cluster of MBG Virtual instances), acting as SIP Proxy/SBC for multiple customers, can also be deployed. This connects to each individual customer internal network, nominally at the same point as the MBG Virtual internal interface. This is the expected scenario in most hosting environments.



**Note:** If a shared SIP SBC is used, then customer internal networks can not be identical to each other. Each customer network must have a different UCC network address range/subnet, so that the shared SIP SBC can route customer-specific SIP traffic correctly.

- If a shared MiVoice Border Gateway (MBG) is provided, then the customer MBG Virtual is used for Teleworker access and Secure Recording Connector only. If there is no shared MBG, then the customer MBG Virtual is also used as SIP Proxy/SBC for the individual customer, as required.
- The per-customer MBG Virtual can also be used for remote administration and other purposes, as per normal MBG operation. Refer to the MiVoice Border Gateway documentation for more information.

For information about configuring vCNS, MiVoice Border Gateway, the IP Phones (and other VoIP end-points), and the external firewall (if one exists in the deployment), see [Table 19, “Network component configuration by Topology type,” on page 91.](#)

For a comparison of the advantages and disadvantages, and the recommended applications of each topology, see [Table 18, “Topology comparisons and recommendations,” on page 88.](#)

## Topology 5: vCNS Based Public Cloud - MiVoice Business Express

Figure 16 shows a public cloud network topology, using vCNS as the access control mechanism for each tenant/customer in the DMZ, using MiVoice Business Express as the UCC application set. vCNS also provides isolation between customers. The MiVoice Business Express MBG component, in series with each customer's vCNS, performs the NAT traversal proxy function.

# vShield Edge Public Cloud - vUCC vApp

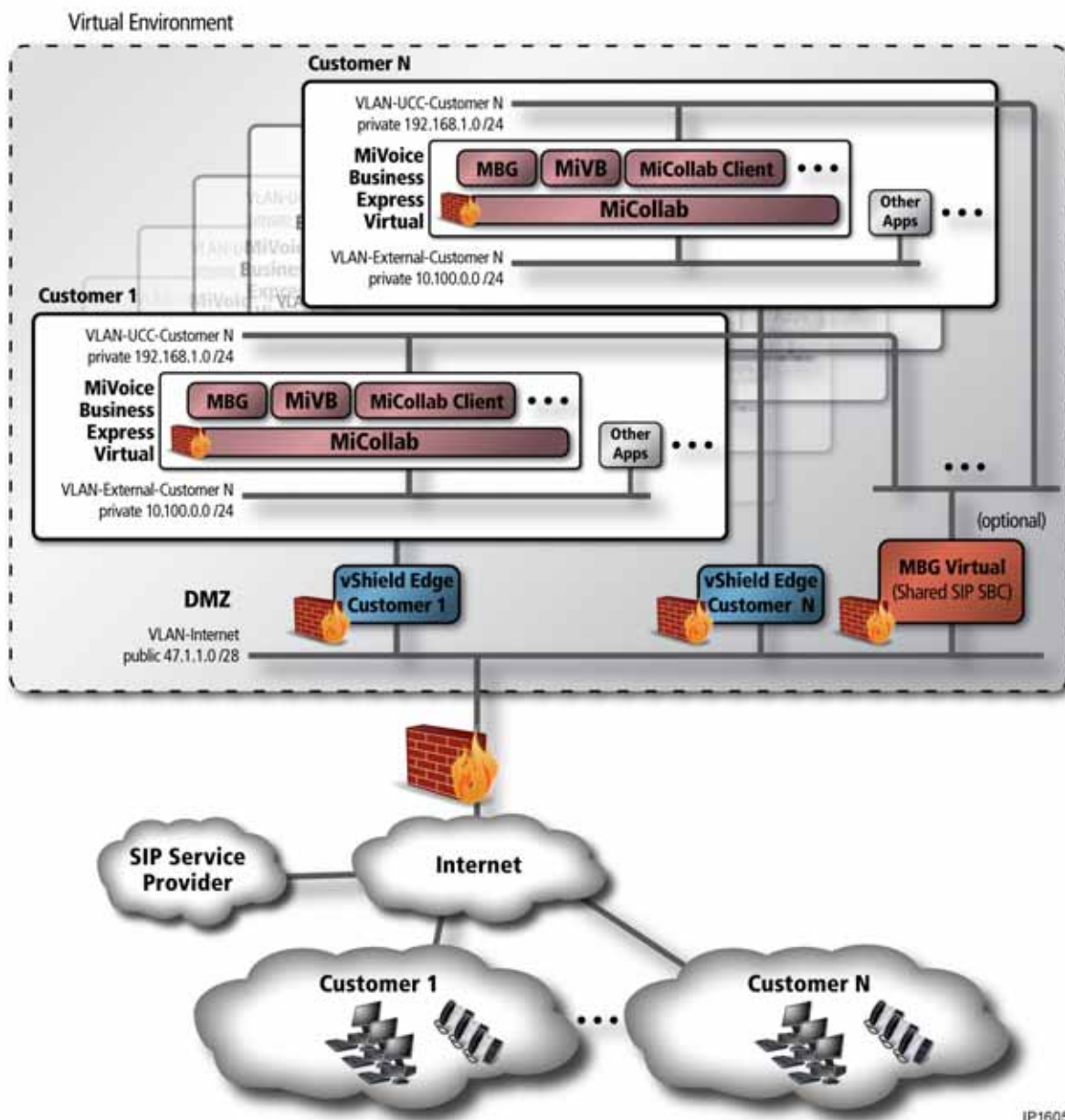


Figure 16: Public Cloud, vCNS Controlled - MiVoice Business Express

This topology is appropriate for hosted multi-tenant public cloud deployments, providing UCC as a service (UCaaS), possibly along with other services, if required. The hosting provider has full control of the network and virtual infrastructure; however, the customer is assumed to have limited control. It is assumed that network-internal threats within each customer are not a concern. Strong isolation between customers is a very high concern. Use of MiVoice Business Express simplifies deployment and initial configuration.



Optionally, a shared MiVoice Border Gateway (or cluster of MBG Virtual instances), acting as SIP Proxy/SBC for multiple customers, can also be introduced. A discussion of advantages and disadvantages of the shared MBG are discussed in Topology 4.



**Note:** This topology maps very closely to the VMware vCloud Director NAT-routed Organization Networks. This deployment of vCNS appliances to isolate customer networks is automated by vCloud Director. For more information, see “vCloud Director Support” on page 95.

### Topology description

The Public Cloud/vCNS with MiVoice Business Express topology is largely an expansion of the previous “[Topology 3: vCNS Based Private Cloud - MiVoice Business Express](#)” on page 80, completely replicating the topology across multiple customers. vCNS is used to isolate customers from each other. Within each customer network, MiVoice Business Express MBG component performs the NAT traversal proxy function, as well as providing an additional firewall layer in front of the UCC applications.

Optionally, a shared MBG Virtual (or cluster of MBG Virtual instances), acting as SIP Proxy/SBC for multiple customers, is also introduced.

In a public cloud environment, it can be assumed that an external firewall will also be in place, outside of the virtualized environment.

The Public Cloud/vCNS MiVoice Business Express topology consists of the following elements. Only elements different from the previous topology are described here.

- MiVoice Business Express is deployed between the vCNS internal interface and the UCC network. This is functionally equivalent to the previous scenario.

For information about configuring vCNS, MBG Virtual, the IP Phones (and other VoIP end-points), and the external firewall (if one exists in the deployment), see [Table 19, “Network component configuration by Topology type,”](#) on page 91.

For a comparison of the advantages and disadvantages, and the recommended applications of each topology, see [Table 18, “Topology comparisons and recommendations,”](#) on page 88.

## Topology advantages, disadvantages, and recommended applications

Table 18 summarizes the advantages and disadvantages of each of the five topologies, it summarizes the situations best suited to each topology.

**Table 18: Topology comparisons and recommendations**

| ADVANTAGES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | DISADVANTAGES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | RECOMMENDED APPLICATION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>TOPOLOGY 1</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>VCNS BASED PRIVATE CLOUD - MBG VIRTUAL PARALLEL WITH VCNS</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Very simple configuration and management for both vCNS and MBG Virtual (basic default configurations).</li> <li>• No coupling of MBG Virtual configuration requirements to vCNS, or visa-versa.</li> <li>• Lowest effort topology to implement</li> <li>• Similar to traditional VLAN-based approach. Easily understood and familiar to administrator.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No protection from network-internal threats</li> <li>• No isolation of concerns (separate trust zones, compliance zones, tenants)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Private cloud/enterprise deployments, where admins have full control of the internal network and virtual environment, and network-internal threats are not a strong concern.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>TOPOLOGY 2</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>VCNS BASED PRIVATE CLOUD - MBG VIRTUAL BEHIND VCNS</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Simple configuration and management, adding only 1:1 address mapping rule at vCNS.</li> <li>• Additional security specifically for applications behind MBG Virtual (on MiVoice Business Express VLAN)</li> <li>• Similar to traditional VLAN-based approach. Easily understood and familiar to administrator.</li> </ul>                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Additional configuration overhead on vCNS (minimal).</li> <li>• Risk that vCNS could impact voice/video quality under load, due to added delay and jitter in media streams, as compared to Topology 1. See “vCNS” on page 73.</li> <li>• No protection from network-internal threats, other than MiVoice Business Express VLANs.</li> <li>• No isolation of concerns (separated trust zones, compliance zones, tenants)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Private cloud/enterprise deployments, where admins have full control of the internal network and virtual environment, and network-internal threats are not a strong concern.</li> <li>• Networks where vCNS is already deployed as a firewall, and customer is not willing (or able) to allow MBG Virtual in parallel with the vCNS appliance (cannot implement Topology 1).</li> <li>• Networks where additional protection from network-internal threats for UCC applications is desired.</li> <li>• Networks requiring alignment with MiVoice Business Express in future.</li> </ul> |

Table 18: Topology comparisons and recommendations

| ADVANTAGES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | DISADVANTAGES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | RECOMMENDED APPLICATION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>TOPOLOGY 3</b><br><b>VCNS BASED PRIVATE CLOUD - MIVOICE BUSINESS EXPRESS</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MiVoice Business Express simplified deployment and initial configuration.</li> <li>• Simple configuration and management adding only two 1:1 address mapping rules at vCNS.</li> <li>• Additional security specifically for applications behind the MBG component of MiVoice Business Express (on UCC VLAN).</li> <li>• Similar to traditional VLAN-based approach. Easily understood and familiar to administrator.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Additional configuration overhead on vCNS (minimal).</li> <li>• Risk that vCNS could impact voice/video quality under load, due to added delay and jitter in media streams. This is a relatively lower risk than in Topology 2, due to the relatively small scale of MiVoice Business Express, unless the vCNS Appliance is under high load for other reasons (non-UCC loads).</li> <li>• No protection from network-internal threats, other than MiVoice Business Express VLANs.</li> <li>• No isolation of concerns (separated trust zones, compliance zones, tenants)</li> </ul>                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recommended for simplified deployment and configuration, using MiVoice Business Express.</li> <li>• Private cloud/enterprise deployments, where admins have full control of the internal network and virtual environment, and network-internal threats are not a strong concern.</li> <li>• Networks where additional protection from network-internal threats for UCC applications is desired.</li> </ul>                            |
| <b>TOPOLOGY 4</b><br><b>VCNS BASED PUBLIC CLOUD</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strong isolation between customers, provided by vCNS.</li> <li>• Simple configuration and management on a per-customer basis.</li> <li>• If shared MiVoice Border Gateway SIP SBC function is used, potential reduced overall resource reservation, cost and administration advantages.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This precludes having all customer networks completely identical.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Simplified mass deployment re: addressing within individual customers, if identical customer-internal network addressing, or easily mapped. Customer apps can be pre-configured for networking (other than MBG Virtual and vCNS external interfaces).</li> <li>• Similar to traditional VLAN-based approach, within each customer.</li> <li>• Maps directly to vCloud Director NAT-routed Organization networks.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Risk that vCNS could impact voice/video quality under load, due to added delay and jitter in media streams. Likely a lower risk in Public Cloud deployments, due to expected relatively smaller customer size.</li> <li>• If the shared MiVoice Border Gateway SIP SBC option is used, then per-customer networks cannot be completely identical.</li> <li>• No protection from customer network internal threats. Expected to be a low concern in hosted environments, where the internal network is highly controlled.</li> <li>• No isolation of concerns (separated trust zones, compliance zones). Low concern in hosted environments.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Public cloud UCaaS or IaaS deployments, where the host admins have full control of the internal network and virtual infrastructure, and customer network-internal threats are not a strong concern.</li> <li>• If shared MBG SIP SBC option does not provide significant advantage (cost saving, reduced admin overhead), then not recommended, in favor of advantages of making all customer internal networks identical.</li> </ul> |

Table 18: Topology comparisons and recommendations

| ADVANTAGES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | DISADVANTAGES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | RECOMMENDED APPLICATION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>TOPOLOGY 5</b><br><b>VCNS BASED PUBLIC CLOUD - MIVoice BUSINESS EXPRESS</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Strong isolation between customers, provided by vCNS.</li> <li>Simple configuration and management on a per-customer basis.</li> <li>Simplified deployment and initial configuration of the UCC applications, due to use of MiVoice Business Express.</li> <li>If the shared MiVoice Border Gateway SIP SBC function is used, potential reduced overall resource reservation, cost and admin advantages.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This precludes having all customer networks completely identical.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Simplified mass deployment re: addressing within individual customers, if identical customer-internal network addressing, or easily mapped. Customer apps can be pre-configured for networking (other than MBG Virtual and vCNS external interfaces).</li> <li>Similar to traditional VLAN-based approach, within each customer.</li> <li>Maps directly to vCloud Director NAT-routed Organization networks.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Risk that vCNS could impact voice/video quality under load, due to added delay &amp; jitter in media streams. Low risk in Public Cloud MiVoice Business Express deployments, due to expected relatively smaller customer size as well as relatively smaller scale of MiVoice Business Express.</li> <li>If the shared MiVoice Border Gateway SIP SBC option is used, then per-customer networks cannot be identical.</li> <li>No protection from customer network internal threats. Likely a low concern in hosted environments, where the internal network is highly controlled.</li> <li>No isolation of concerns (separated trust zones, compliance zones). Likely a low concern in hosted environments.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recommended for simplified deployment and configuration, using MiVoice Business Express.</li> <li>Public cloud UCaaS or IaaS deployments, where the host admins have full control of the internal network and virtual infrastructure, and customer network-internal threats are not a strong concern.</li> <li>If shared MiVoice Border Gateway SIP SBC does not provide significant advantage (cost saving, reduced admin overhead), then it is recommended to not use it. Instead, take advantage of the benefits of making all customer internal networks identical.</li> </ul> |

## Network component configuration by Topology type

Table 19 provides configuration instructions for the five topology types described in this chapter. For detailed descriptions of the advantages, disadvantages and recommended uses for each topology, see Table 18, “Topology comparisons and recommendations,” on page 88.

**Table 19: Network component configuration by Topology type**

| NETWORK COMPONENT                                                                     | CONFIGURATION CONSIDERATIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>TOPOLOGY 1</b><br><b>VCNS BASED PRIVATE CLOUD - MBG VIRTUAL PARALLEL WITH VCNS</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>VCNS</b>                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No UCC-specific configuration required.</li> <li>Configure for needs of any non-UCC applications (web access from user desktops, or other applications requiring Internet access, for example).</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual</b>                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Standard Server-Gateway configuration</li> <li>If UCC applications are on a different LAN segment (subnet) than the MiVoice Border Gateway internal interface (VLAN-External-Facing in the diagram), then you must configure LAN gateway address (address of the internal router) as a routing rule for accessing these applications. Refer to the MiVoice Border Gateway documentation describing “Additional Local Networks”.</li> <li>If there is an external firewall, configure the public WAN address as the IP address of the external firewall.</li> <li>If MiCollab Audio, Web, and Video is part of the solution, then you must configure a second public WAN IP address for MiCollab AWV Connection Point HTTPS, and configure the LAN address of the MiCollab AWV Virtual application. MiVoice Border Gateway then forwards HTTPS (port 443) in the second WAN interface to MiCollab AWV. Refer to the MiVoice Border Gateway documentation for details.</li> </ul> |
| <b>IP Phones, other VoIP end-points</b>                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All external endpoints are in Teleworker configuration.</li> <li>If there is an external firewall, then internal end points must not be in the Teleworker configuration.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>External firewall (if it exists)</b>                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure static 1:1 external to internal address mapping for MBG Virtual external (WAN) interface.</li> <li>The NAT/firewall function must preserve the TCP and UDP port numbers in packets exchanged between the MBG Virtual and the external network. In other words, only the address field may be changed.</li> <li>The public address bound to the MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual external facing address must be a static IP address, visible from the external network (Internet). This should be a separate address from the external IP address of the vCNS (or other upstream firewall).</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If external access to MiCollab AWV services is required, then a second 1:1 external to internal address mapping, similarly configured, must be provided for the second MBG Virtual address corresponding to the virtual MiCollab AWV.</p>                                                                                                        |

**Table 19: Network component configuration by Topology type**

| NETWORK COMPONENT                                                               | CONFIGURATION CONSIDERATIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>TOPOLOGY 2</b><br><b>VCNS BASED PRIVATE CLOUD - MBG VIRTUAL BEHIND VCNS</b>  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>vCNS</b>                                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure static 1:1 external to internal address mapping for MBG Virtual external (WAN) interface.</li> <li>• The NAT/firewall function must preserve the TCP and UDP port numbers in packets exchanged between the MBG Virtual and the external network. In other words, only the address field may be changed.</li> <li>• The public address bound to the MBG Virtual external facing address must be a static IP address, visible from the external network (Internet). This should be a separate address from the external IP address of the vCNS (or other upstream firewall).</li> <li>• If MiCollab AWW is part of the solution, then you must also configure a second 1:1 external to internal address mapping for the second MiVoice Border Gateway WAN address required for MiCollab AWW Connection Point HTTPS.</li> <li>• Configure for needs of any non-UCC applications (web access from user desktops, or other applications requiring Internet access).</li> </ul>                                             |
| <b>MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual</b>                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standard Server-Gateway configuration.</li> <li>• Configure the public WAN address as the IP address of the vCNS public IP address (or as the public IP address of the external firewall, if present).</li> <li>• If MiCollab AWW is part of the solution, then you must also configure a second public WAN IP address for MCA Connection Point HTTPS and configure LAN address of the MiCollab AWW, as in previous topology.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>IP Phones, other VoIP end-points</b>                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All external endpoints are in Teleworker configuration.</li> <li>• Internal endpoints must not be in Teleworker configuration.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>External firewall (if it exists)</b>                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure as per vCNS. It is basically the same function, in series.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>TOPOLOGY 3</b><br><b>VCNS BASED PRIVATE CLOUD - MIVoice BUSINESS EXPRESS</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>vCNS</b>                                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure two static 1:1 external to internal address mappings for MiVoice Business Express external (WAN) interface</li> <li>• The NAT/firewall function must preserve the TCP and UDP port numbers in packets exchanged between MiVoice Business Express and the external network; only the address fields may be changed.</li> <li>• The public addresses bound to MiVoice Business Express external facing addresses must be static IP addresses, visible from the external network (Internet). These should be separate addresses from the external IP address of the vCNS (or other upstream firewall).</li> <li>• If MiCollab AWW is part of the solution, then you must also configure a second 1:1 external to internal address mapping for the second MiVoice Business Express/MBG WAN address required for the MiCollab AWW Connection Point HTTPS.</li> <li>• Configure for the needs of any non-UCC applications (web access from user desktops, and any other applications requiring Internet access).</li> </ul> |
| <b>MiVoice Business Express - MBG Virtual component</b>                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standard configuration, as built into MiVoice Business Express.</li> <li>• Configure the public WAN address as the IP address of the vCNS public IP address (or as the public IP address of the external firewall, if one exists).</li> <li>• If MiCollab AWW is part of the solution, then you must also configure a second public WAN IP address for the MiCollab AWW Connection Point HTTPS, as in previous topologies. Configuration of the MiCollab AWW LAN address is not required.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

**Table 19: Network component configuration by Topology type**

| NETWORK COMPONENT                                                        | CONFIGURATION CONSIDERATIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>IP Phones, other VoIP end-points</b>                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All external endpoints are in Teleworker configuration.</li> <li>Internal endpoints must not be in Teleworker configuration.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>External firewall (if it exists)</b>                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure as per vCNS. It is basically the same function, in series.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>TOPOLOGY 4<br/>VCNS BASED PUBLIC CLOUD</b>                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>vCNS per customer</b>                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure static 1:1 external to internal address mapping for the MBG Virtual external (WAN) interface.</li> <li>The NAT/firewall function must preserve the TCP and UDP port numbers in packets exchanged between the MiVoice Border Gateway and the external network; only the address field may be changed.</li> <li>The public address bound to the MiVoice Border Gateway external facing address must be a static IP address, visible from the external network (Internet). This should be a separate address from the external IP address of the vCNS (or other upstream firewall).</li> <li>If MiCollab AWV is part of the customer solution—requires external (WAN/Internet) access—then you must also configure a second 1:1 external to internal address mapping for the second MBG WAN address needed for MiCollab AWV Connection Point HTTPS.</li> <li>Configure for the needs of any non-UCC applications and any applications requiring Internet access.</li> </ul> |
| <b>MiVoice Border Gateway per customer</b>                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Standard Server-Gateway configuration.</li> <li>Configure the public WAN address as the IP address of the per-customer vCNS public IP address (or as the public IP address of the external firewall, if present).</li> <li>If MiCollab AWV is part of the customer solution, then you must also configure a second public WAN IP address for MiCollab AWV Connection Point HTTPS and configure LAN address of the MiCollab AWV, as in topologies described earlier in this guide.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>IP Phones, other VoIP end-points</b>                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All endpoints are in Teleworker configuration.</li> <li>There are no host site internal endpoints.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>External firewall (if it exists)</b>                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure as per vCNS, as described for Topology 2, and replicated across all customers. It is basically the same function, in series, one for each customer.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>TOPOLOGY 5<br/>VCNS BASED PUBLIC CLOUD - MIVoice BUSINESS EXPRESS</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>vCNS per customer</b>                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure static 1:1 external to internal address mapping for the MBG Virtual external (WAN) interface.</li> <li>The NAT/firewall function must preserve the TCP and UDP port numbers in packets exchanged between the MBG Virtual and the external network; only the address field may be changed.</li> <li>The public address bound to the MBG Virtual external facing address must be a static IP address, visible from the external network (Internet). This should be a separate address from the external IP address of the vCNS (or other upstream firewall).</li> <li>If MiCollab AWV is part of the customer solution—requires external (WAN/Internet) access—then you must also configure a second 1:1 external to internal address mapping for the second MBG WAN address needed for MiCollab AWV Connection Point HTTPS.</li> <li>Configure for the needs of any non-UCC applications and any applications requiring Internet access.</li> </ul>                       |

**Table 19: Network component configuration by Topology type**

| NETWORK<br>COMPONENT                                                    | CONFIGURATION CONSIDERATIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MiVoice<br/>Business<br/>Express - MBG<br/>Virtual<br/>component</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standard Server-Gateway configuration, as built in to MiVoice Business Express.</li> <li>• Configure the public WAN address as the IP address of the per-customer vCNS public IP address (or as the public IP address of the external firewall, if present).</li> <li>• If MiCollab AWW is part of the customer solution, then you must also configure a second public WAN IP address for MiCollab AWW Connection Point HTTPS, as in previous topologies. Configuration of the MiCollab AWW LAN address is not required.</li> </ul> |
| <b>IP Phones, other<br/>VoIP end-points</b>                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All endpoints are in Teleworker configuration.</li> <li>• There are no host site internal endpoints.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>External firewall<br/>(if it exists)</b>                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure as per vCNS, as described for Topology 2, and replicated across all customers. It is basically the same function, in series, one for each customer.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |



# Chapter 6

## VCLOUD DIRECTOR SUPPORT



## vCloud Director Support

This chapter describes the general behavior of all Mitel virtual applications when deployed in a VMware vCloud Director environment (vCD). This includes deployment methods, runtime behavior, and networking-related considerations.

vCloud Director requires vSphere (ESXi + vCenter Server), and vCloud Networking and Security (vCNS) as an underpinning, at a compatible version level.



**Note:** vCD 5.1 and above only, are supported for use with Mitel virtual appliances.

### vCloud Director overview

This section provides a brief overview of the VMware vCloud Director (vCD) product. For a more complete understanding of vCloud Director architecture, operation, and use, refer to the VMware documentation. Figure 17 shows the VMware vCloud Director system architecture at a very high level (from VMware documentation).



**Figure 17: vCloud Director high level architecture**

vCloud Director operates as an administration layer on top of VMware vSphere, using vSphere resources, and providing an abstracted view of vSphere resources to users. vCloud Director

uses VMware vCNS to create secured organization networks and other networking constructs; this is largely invisible to the user.

Table 20 below outlines key concepts for understanding how vCloud Director operates.

**Table 20: vCloud Director Key Concepts**

| CONCEPT                   | DEFINITION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Organization              | <p>The unit of multi-tenancy that represents a single logical security boundary, assigned sets of resources, and policies.</p> <p>An Organization contains users, one or more virtual data centers (vDCs), and one or more networks. Organizations may represent a customer, in the hosted service provider/public cloud case, or organizations within a corporation (private cloud case).</p> <p>Organization administrators and users control their resources through an Organization-specific web administration portal provided by vCloud Director (vCD), and are completely segregated from other Organizations and the vCD System layer.</p> |
| Virtual Data Center (vDC) | A grouping of computational and storage resources from a single vCenter Server. vDCs at the vCloud Director level map to resource pools at the vSphere level.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Provider vDC              | <p>A provider vDC represents an overall set of resources from which sub-units (such as Organization vDCs) are allocated and managed by vCloud Director system administration.</p> <p>A vCloud Director installation may make use of more than one provider vDC.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Organization vDC          | <p>A sub-grouping of computational and storage resources allocated from a Provider vDC and assigned to a single Organization, under control of the Organization. An Organization may have more than one Organization vDC.</p> <p>An Organization vDC is a deployment environment in which VAs and vApps can be instantiated, deployed, and powered on. An Organization vDC allocates resources to VAs and vApps using one of the following allocation models:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pay-As-You-Go</li> <li>• Reservation Pool</li> <li>• Allocation Pool</li> </ul>                                                         |
| Catalog                   | <p>A repository of vApp Templates and media available to users for deployment.</p> <p>Catalogs can be private to an Organization or published to all Organizations in the same vCloud Director environment.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| vApp                      | <p>A container for a software solution in the vCloud Director, and the standard unit of deployment for workloads in vCloud Director. A vApp contains one or more virtual machines, has power-on operations, and can be imported or exported as an OVF.</p> <p>A virtual appliance (VA) is effectively a single-VM vApp.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Lease                     | Both resources representing Catalog Templates and deployed vApps are subject to Leasing from the vCloud Director provider. A lease sets limits on the amount of time the resource may be used before the lease must be renewed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## How vCloud Director capabilities are supported in Mitel products

Mitel virtual appliances use vCloud Director in the following operations:

- Publishing Mitel virtual appliances or vApps as Organization Catalog items
- Deploying Mitel virtual appliances from Catalog, within an Organization's vDC
- Ensuring Mitel virtual appliances receive adequate resource allocations for their run-time needs
- Understanding the implications of vCloud Director lease expiry, and planning appropriate notification of upcoming expiry to customers
- Undeploying Mitel virtual appliances

Only information specific to Mitel virtual appliances is described in this guide; for full information and instructions, refer to the VMware documentation. For specifics related to using the vCloud Director Web Admin interface, refer to the *VMware vCloud Director User Guide*.

## Creating and publishing virtual application Catalog Templates

vCloud Director 5.5 supports direct deployment of OVA packages into a Catalog or a Organization. Mitel virtual applications are available in OVA format. Deploying the OVA directly is the preferred method if your vCloud Director environment supports it.

This section describes how to create and publish Mitel virtual appliances as vCloud Director Catalog Template items from OVA packages. vCloud Director releases before 5.5 do not directly support deployment of VAs or vApps packaged in OVA format, which is Mitel's standard packaging and distribution format.

If you are using vCloud Director 5.1 or earlier, which support uploading of VA and vApps only when packaged in OVF format, (the unpacked file hierarchy making up the VA or vApp definition), then you must use the following procedures. The OVA is essentially a TAR-packed, one-file packaging of the OVF directory tree, so Mitel OVAs must first be unpacked to OVF, or otherwise prepared to be uploaded to vCloud Director Catalogs. Multiple methods are available.



**Note:** Catalog items can also be created as ISO images in vCloud Director. However, Mitel VAs and vApps do not need this capability, since they are packaged as OVAs. While it is possible, deploying from an ISO is not recommended practice for OVA-packaged applications, and is not covered in this guide.

The following subsections provide descriptions of three different procedures to create Catalog items from OVA distribution files. The procedures described here are:

- “Unpack and publish OVA in Linux” on page 100
- “Unpack and publish OVA in Microsoft® Windows®” on page 100
- “Import VM from vSphere” on page 102

### Unpack and publish OVA in Linux

If you are using Linux desktop-based administration, the Linux desktop may be the best way to unpack and publish the OVA. Both command line and GUI options are described. The GUI method described assumes CentOS/Red Hat.

The Linux method is preferred to the others discussed in this section because it may be somewhat easier to perform than the Windows desktop method.

To unpack and publish from OVA format file in a Linux environment, use the following steps.

**Table 21: Linux method**

| COMMAND LINE PROCEDURE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | GUI PROCEDURE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Unpack the OVA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 1. Copy or download the application OVA file to a temporary location in Linux, or mount it as a share drive.<br><br><b># cp app.ova /Temp/</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 1. Drag and drop the application OVA into a temporary folder.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 2. Navigate to the temporary directory.<br><br><b># cd /Temp</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 2. Right-click the OVA file, and select <b>Open with Archive Manager</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 3. Create a destination directory for the unpacked OVF.<br><br><b># mkdir app-ovf</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 3. In the Archive Manager: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Click <b>Extract</b>.</li> <li>• In the folder drop down menu, select <b>Extract &gt; Other &gt; New Folder</b>.</li> <li>• Enter a name for the destination folder, app-ovf, for example.</li> <li>• Click <b>Extract</b>.</li> </ul> |
| 4. Unpack the OVA using the TAR command.<br><br><b># tar -xf app.ova --directory app-ovf/</b><br><br>The files are unpacked into the specified destination directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4. Close the Archive Manager                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Upload the OVF to the Catalog                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open the vCloud Director Web Admin for the Organization as Organization Administrator or Catalog Author.</li> <li>2. Open the target Catalog:</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Upload</b> icon.</li> <li>4. Browse to the OVF folder you created in the previous step, and select app.ovf., or the name of the destination folder you created.</li> <li>5. Click <b>Upload</b>.</li> <li>6. Certificate exceptions may pop up during progress. Click <b>Accept</b> on each one.</li> <li>7. Confirm progress and final success.</li> </ol> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

### Unpack and publish OVA in Microsoft® Windows®

If you are using mostly Windows desktop-based administration, the Windows desktop approach may be the best way to unpack and publish the OVA.

This approach involves extra steps, compared to the Linux method, and the use of additional tools, so the Linux method is preferable, if it is available.

#### Unpack and publish in Windows:

1. Install and configure a TAR file unpacking utility.

- Configure the unpacking tool so that it does not automatically adjust text files to DOS/Windows line breaks (keep line breaks in UNIX format).

Recommended tool: 7-Zip ([www.7-Zip.org](http://www.7-Zip.org))

- If the unpacking tool you have chosen cannot be configured to so that it does not automatically adjust text file format, then download and configure a text editor that is capable of converting the files back to UNIX format.

Recommended tool: IDM Computer Solutions UltraEdit

2. Create a destination directory for the unpacked OVF; for example, C:\Temp\App\App-OVF.
3. Unpack the OVA using the TAR utility.
  - a. Right-click the OVA file, select **Open with**, and select the TAR utility (or select the TAR utility directly if that is possible).
  - b. Click **Extract All** (or the equivalent command for the utility), select the destination folder you just created, and click **OK**.
  - c. Click **Extract**.
4. Close the unpacking utility.
5. If the unpacking utility does not support leaving the file format as-is (instead, automatically converting text files to DOS format), then open each text file (app.mf, app.ovf, and so on) with the text editor described above.

For each text file:

- a. Right-click the text file, select **Open with**, and select the editor utility (or select the utility directly if available).
- b. For each file, use **Save As** to convert it to UNIX format.

#### Upload the OVF to the Catalog:

1. Open the vCloud Director Web Admin for the Organization (as Organization Administrator or Catalog Author).
2. Open the target Catalog, and click **Upload**.
  - a. Click the Upload icon, browse to the OVF folder created previously, select the OVF file, and click **Upload**,
  - b. Certificate exceptions may pop up during progress. Accept them.
  - c. Confirm progress and final success.

As an alternative to the above procedure, VMware also provides a tool called OVF Tool, which has a command line interface. Since this tool is more difficult to install and use, is considerably slower, and can alter file names as provided in the original OVA packaging, it is not generally

recommended. However, this tool may be useful where scripting is used to automate OVF conversion and importing.

### Import VM from vSphere

This method requires that you have both vCloud Director system administrator level access and vCenter administrator access. This cannot be used by normal Organization level administrators Organization users.

This method may be most appropriate if you wish to set up and publish master Catalogs for your customer Organizations to use.

To accomplish this, you can create a separate special Organization specifically for the purpose of importing and publishing the OVA-based VAs and vApps with a Public Catalog. Users of this special Organization are given system-level administrator access to vCloud Director and to vCenter, allowing them to do the procedures required to populate the Catalog. The special Organization's Public Catalog can then be accessed by normal customer Organizations for the purpose of deploying the VAs and vApps.

To import from vSphere, use the following procedure.

#### Deploy OVA as a virtual appliance in the vSphere level:

1. Log in to vSphere vCenter as Administrator, or another administrative user with sufficient privileges for deploying virtual appliances.



**Note:** You must be logged in as vCenter Administrator. Normally, vCloud Director Organization-level administrators do not have such access.

2. Create a new, separate resource pool and/or a folder at the vSphere level to manage the new VMs you will deploy. This step is optional, but recommended to make organizing your VMs easier.
3. Deploy the application OVA as a VM in vSphere vCenter using normal VMware procedures. Leave the VM powered off in vSphere.



**Note:** You must select valid network connections for each vNIC on the VM in vSphere. If you do not, the Import operation (described in the next procedure) will fail in vCloud Director. The connections you enter do not have to be valid for vCloud Director use, but they must be valid in vSphere.

#### Import a virtual appliance to a vCloud Director Catalog:

1. Log in to vCloud Director as a vCloud Director System Administrator (or equivalent).



**Note:** You must be logged in as vCloud Director System Administrator. Normally, vCloud Director Organization-level administrators do not have such access.

2. Navigate to the target Organization and the specific public or private Catalog to import the VA or vApp into. Select the Catalog.

The catalog opens in List view.

3. Select the **vApp Templates** tab.



4. In the **vApp Templates List** view, click **Import from vSphere**.

OR: Click the **Actions** drop-down menu and select **Import from vSphere**.

OR: Right-click in the **Template** list and select **Import from vSphere**.

The **Import vApp Template** wizard opens.

5. In **Catalog**, enter the catalog item name.
6. In **Description**, enter a description of this catalog item. Adding a description is optional, but recommended.
7. If there is more than one vDC configured for this Organization, select the Organizational vDC to import to.
8. Select **Move VM**, to move the VM from its current vSphere location to the vCloud Director-generated resource pool corresponding to this Catalog.



**Note:** It is recommended that you not use **Copy VM**. This is the default setting; Copy VM copies the VM to vCloud Director space, leaving the original in place in vSphere. This can waste space and be more difficult to manage.

9. Optional: Select **Gold Master**. See “General settings for Catalog Template items” on page 103 for details.
10. Click **OK** to exit the **Import** dialog box, and start the import operation.
11. In the **Catalog List** view, watch the progress of the import operation and confirm that it finishes successfully. This process can be quite long, depending on the size of the VM (or OVA), network performance, and the total load on the hosts involved.

## General settings for Catalog Template items

After Catalog Template items are uploaded or imported, and after they appear in the vApp Templates List view, you can modify the Template settings.

To open a template, select the template. Right-click and select **Properties**, or select **Properties** from the **Actions** drop-down menu.

You can modify the properties as follows:

- Change the name or description of the Template.
- Set **Gold Master** to **Yes** or **No** (the default is **No**). Changing the Gold Master designation to **Yes** has no effect on the Template item, either when importing or when deployed, other than to highlight the Template. This could be useful, for example, to mark the Template items as ready for general deployment, as opposed to “under test” or “under construction”.
- Reset the Template lease. The **Template Lease** setting determines how long the Template remains in the Catalog. This is limited to the maximum Catalog item lease time set for the vDC in which the Template is deployed. See “vCloud Director Lease and Lease Expiry” on page 116 for more information.
- Set **Create vApp** from **Template Options**. This is not applicable to Mitel VAs, and other single VM virtual appliances.

- Set **VM startup order**. This is not applicable to Mitel VAs, and other single VM virtual appliances.

## Deploying and configuring virtual applications from catalogs

To deploy a Mitel VA or vApp from the vCloud Director Catalog, follow normal vCloud Director Web Admin procedures. Two different methods are described here.



**Note:** If you are installing multiple Mitel vApps, it is strongly recommended that you deploy them one at a time. This will avoid having the guest properties for all of the vApps displayed at the same time, which can cause confusion in completing the deployment.

### Method 1 - Deploying from Catalog View:

1. Log in to the Organization as an Administrator, or another user authorized to deploy VMs.
2. Navigate to the **Catalogs** tab and open the Catalog containing the vApp Template to deploy. This can be an Organization private Catalog, or one published externally by a different Organization.
3. On the **vApp Templates** tabs, select a vApp template, right-click, and select **Add to My Cloud**.
4. Follow the steps in the **Add to my Cloud** wizard that is launched:
  - a. When the Mitel EULA appears, click **Accept**.
  - b. Enter a name and description for the vApp. The description is optional, but recommended.



**Note:** You cannot modify the runtime and storage lease duration for the VA at this stage, but you can modify and renew the lease at a later time. See “vCloud Director Lease and Lease Expiry” on page 116.

- c. Configure the network mappings: For each network interface on the VM, select the network to connect the interface to, and the IP Allocation type. For Mitel VAs, select **Static - Manual IP** Allocation. **Static - Manual** is the only IP Allocation type currently supported for Mitel VAs.  
For VAs with more than one vNIC, the network and IP Assignment must be done for each vNIC separately.



**Note:** For IP Assignment type, three options are available. Each of these enable address and related configuration to be pushed into the VA when it is deployed. Which one to use depends on desired outcome, and compatibility of the specific VA being deployed. However, current release Mitel VAs do not support either IP Pool or DHCP-based auto configuration of addresses. Always select **Static – Manual** allocation.

- d. Configure **Properties**. Not all Mitel product releases support the modification of custom **Properties**; these Mitel VAs will display the message, “There are no user configurable properties.”  
When the custom properties screen appears, fill in all fields. For more information about the Custom properties for each Mitel VA, see “Deploying Mitel OVAs” on page 128.



**Note:** **Configure Networks** and **Custom Properties** settings are not available for use with current MSL-based VAs.

- e. The **Ready to Complete** screen appears. Check the settings displayed to ensure that they are all correct, and click **Finish**.
5. Navigate to **My Cloud > vApps** view to watch progress and ensure success.

#### Method 2 - Deploying from My Cloud view:

1. Log in to the Organization as an Administrator, or another user authorized to deploy VMs.
2. Navigate to the **My Cloud** tab or the vApps list view.
3. Right-click in the vApps list and select **Add vApp From Catalog**, or click the **Actions** drop-down menu and select **Add vApp From Catalog**. The **Add vApp from Catalog** wizard opens.
4. Select the appropriate catalog (either Organization private or Public), then select the Template to deploy.
5. Click **Next**.
6. For the rest of the procedure, see “[Method 1 - Deploying from Catalog View:](#)” on page 104.

#### Deployment differences relative to vSphere

One important difference between vCloud Director-based deployment and deployment directly on vSphere is that the Configuration Options dialog is not presented in vCloud Director, as it is in vSphere. Therefore the administrator cannot choose the specific deployment profile to use; Small Business or Enterprise, for example. In vCloud Director, the vApp is deployed in its default configuration.

While this issue is created when the Virtual Appliance is uploaded or imported to a vApp Template in the Catalog, it manifests only when the Template is deployed.

Unless the vApp is appropriately modified to correspond to the desired deployment profile, its resourcing may be incorrect; it may be too small for the desired capacity, or unnecessarily large.

Refer to section “[Modifying vApp Resourcing for Deployment Configuration](#)” on page 111 for details on how to work around this issue.

#### Post-deployment configuration

For current Mitel VAs other than MiVoice Business Express, after the Mitel VA has been created, the VA is then configured as for deployment of the VA under vSphere vCenter. In the case of MiVoice Business Express, initial configuration is performed using the Mitel Initial Configuration Wizard at deployment time (see “[Deploying and configuring virtual applications from catalogs](#)” on page 104).

This procedure varies, depending on Mitel VA specifics; the basic steps are as follows:

1. Right-click the VA name, and select **Start**.
2. Double-click the **Console** icon to open the console on the VA.

3. Configure the administrator password, the host name, the IP address, IP mask, and DNS.
4. Select the network interfaces, and so on, as required.

Refer to application-specific administration and engineering guides, available on Mitel OnLine, for detailed procedures.

The VA is now ready to use.



**Note:** With the exception of MiVoice Business Express, Mitel VAs are not pre-configured with IP address as set in the address auto-configuration step above. The MiVoice Business Express Initial Configuration Wizard guides you through the initial system setup at the time you first login to the MiVoice Business Express web administration. Refer to MiVoice Business Express documentation.

## Run-time resource behavior of deployed virtual applications

Virtual appliances and vApps deployed through vCloud Director are run at the vSphere/vCenter level on the same ESXi, so most application behavior and performance characteristics are exactly the same as if deployed directly through vSphere/vCenter.

There are, however, large potential differences in the way resources are allocated to the run-time VAs in vCloud Director environments. Many Mitel VAs have CPU and memory reservations built into their OVA packaging. vCloud Director makes modifications to internal resource reservations of the underlying OVA/OVF when the VA is deployed. vCloud Director does not modify other aspects, such as disk size and number of vCPUs, for example.

In the vCloud Director environment, the allocation model assigned to the Organization vDC into which virtual appliances are being deployed affects how resource reservations built into the virtual appliance OVA are applied. Table 22 below summarizes these differences.

Table 22: Resource Settings vs. Allocation Model

| ALLOCATION<br>MODEL | VA RUN-TIME SETTING                              |                              |                    |                                              |                       |                     |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
|                     | CPU                                              |                              |                    | MEMORY                                       |                       |                     |
|                     | RESERVA-<br>TION                                 | LIMIT                        | SHARES             | RESERVA-<br>TION                             | LIMIT                 | SHARES              |
| Pay-As-You-<br>Go   | VA # vCPU<br>x<br>vCPU speed<br>x<br>guarantee % | VA # vCPU<br>x<br>vCPU speed | Normal<br>(forced) | VA memory<br>x<br>guarantee %                | VA Memory<br>(forced) | Normal<br>(forced)  |
| Allocation Pool     | 0<br>(forced)                                    | VA # vCPU                    | Normal<br>(forced) | VA memory<br>reservation<br>x<br>guarantee % | VA Memory             | Normal<br>(forced)  |
| Reservation<br>Pool | VA CPU<br>reservation                            | VA CPU limit                 | VA CPU<br>shares   | VA memory<br>reservation                     | VA memory<br>limit    | VA memory<br>shares |

**Notes:**

1. VA # vCPU - number of vCPUs assigned to the VA in OVA/OVF
2. VA memory - amount of memory (memory size) assigned to VA in OVA/OVF
3. VA CPU reservation - CPU resource reservation (GHz) applied to VA in OVA/OVF
4. VA memory reservation - memory resource reservation (GB) applied to VA in OVA/OVF
5. VA limit - resource limit (CPU or memory) applied to the VA in OVA/OVF
6. VA shares - resource shares (CPU or memory) applied to VA in OVA/OVF
7. vCPU speed - vCPU speed value assigned to Pay-As-You-Go, as set in Organization vDC allocation policies (see following subsections)
8. Guarantee % - CPU or Memory resource guarantee value, as set in the Organization vDC allocation



**Note:** In early testing, Mitel found discrepancies in the way Allocation Pool reservations are set, relative to the formulas in VMware documentation. It is important to check actual applied values in the customer vCloud Director environment by inspecting actual reservations of the deployed VMs at vSphere level while the VM is running.

In vCloud Director, each allocation model allows different controls for how resource over-commit is managed. For example, as can be seen in [Table 22](#) above, both Pay-As-You-Go and Allocation Pool allocation models provide a “guarantee percent” control, that sets the reservation at run time, based on adjustment of the virtual appliances built-in reservations. Even these two models apply the allocation percent control somewhat differently, however. Only the Reservation Pool allocation model fully preserves the virtual appliances reservations.

Further details and discussion about each allocation model are provided in the following sub-sections.

### Pay-As-You-Go allocation model

The Pay-As-You-Go allocation model is not supported for real-time voice applications that provide their own strict built-in reservations, since it cannot provide the required CPU reservation guarantees.

Pay-As-You-Go allocation, with suitable tuning, could be a good choice in some circumstances, such as large hosting providers, or try-and-buy agreements.

The Pay-As-You-Go allocation model is designed to:

- Allow customer organizations to control the amount of resources being used (and therefore, what they will be billed by their provider).
- Allow the provider (the vCloud Director system administrator) to manage Service Level Agreement (SLA) assurances by managing their overall resource over-commit levels.
- Allocate resources and calculate reservations at the VA level.

As shown in [Table 22](#), this model effectively ignores any CPU GHz reservation built into the OVA file for the VA, instead basing reserved resources only on the number of vCPUs and the vCPU speed, as modified by the percent guarantee. Similarly, memory reservation is based on the VA's built-in memory size, as modified by the percent guarantee, and ignoring VA built-in reservations. Both CPU and memory shares are always forced to **Normal**, independent of any built-in VA setting.

### Recommendations:

- The Pay-As-You-Go allocation model is not recommended for use with real-time-sensitive UCC applications (MiVoice Business Virtual, MBG Virtual, MiCollab Virtual), and is not supported for deployments in which voice quality guarantees are part of the SLA.
- If you are using the Pay-As-You-Go allocation model, customers with a strict SLA can be provided with a different Organization vDC, specifically for their real time applications, using a different allocation model (Reservation Pool, for example). This is the preferred approach.
- The Pay-As-You-Go allocation model can be a viable choice in larger hosting providers, where there are plenty of resources, overall, and there are large numbers of Organizations using the same allocation approach.
- As guaranteed percent values approach 100%, this model becomes increasingly close to the Reservation Pool model, with the exception that it is based on set vCPU speed in the Organization vDC (rather than the VA's CPU reservations), and on the VA's set memory size (rather than memory reservations).
- If voice quality is part of the SLA provided to the Organization, then allocation guaranteed percent values should be set relatively high for the Organization vDC, especially when the CPU reservation is to be used for real time voice.
- If voice quality is not an important part of the SLA provided to the Organization, then allocation guaranteed percent values can be set somewhat lower for the CPU. However, memory percent guarantees should still be set fairly high, to avoid slow response time.

For detailed information on configuring the Pay-As-You-Go allocation model, refer to VMware documentation.

### Allocation Pool allocation model

The Allocation Pool allocation model is not supported for real-time voice applications that provide their own strict built-in reservations, since it cannot provide the required CPU or memory reservation guarantees.

Allocation Pool allocation, with adequate and guaranteed resourcing at the Organization vDC level, can be a good choice in some circumstances, such as small systems running alongside other low-demand workloads.

The Allocation Pool allocation model is designed to:

- Allow customer organizations limited control of the amount of resources being used (along with what they will be billed by their provider).
- Allow the provider (the vCloud Director system administrator) to maximize resource over-commit while maintaining SLAs at the Organization vDC level.
- Allocate resources and calculate reservations at the Organization vDC level, with individual VAs drawing on resources from the overall reservation of the Organization vDC.

In the Allocation Pool model, resources are committed to the Organization vDC (drawn from the overall Provider vDC) when the Organization vDC is created. In effect, this allows the customer Organization to control their own over-commit levels. If the CPU guaranteed percent

value remains set at 0 (the default) larger numbers of virtual appliances and vApps may be run simultaneously, with the effect that they all slow down, but they are still able to run.

VAs with built-in reservations are then modified when deployed, as shown in [Table 22](#), and draw their resources from the overall Organization pool. This effectively reduces the Mitel built in reservations, which may affect voice quality.

**Recommendations:**

- The Allocation Pool allocation model is not recommended for use with real-time-sensitive UCC applications (MiVoice Business Virtual, MBG Virtual, MiCollab Virtual, etc), and is not supported for deployments where voice quality guarantees are part of the SLA.
- Alternatively, the customer with the strict SLA could be provided with a different Organization vDC, specifically for their real time applications, using a different allocation model (Reservation Pool, for example). This is the preferred approach.
- The Allocation Pool allocation model can be a good choice, under some circumstances, especially when the customer Organization can afford lots of overall resourcing for their Organization vDC.
- In this model, it would primarily be up to the customer Organization to ensure they provide enough resources to ensure voice quality. This, in effect, provides customer-controlled SLA.
- If it is known that the customer will be deploying voice or other real-time sensitive virtual appliances or vApps, the hosting provider should set CPU guaranteed percent values relatively high. This will ensure that the Organization vDC overall gets adequate CPU and memory resources for their needs, including the real-time applications, even when there is high overall load across the host's Provider vDC.

For detailed information about configuring the Allocation Pool allocation model, refer to VMware documentation.

## Reservation Pool allocation model

The Reservation Pool allocation model is the only allocation model that is fully supported for real-time voice applications that provide their own strict built-in reservations (like Mitel voice applications).

Where the Organization is using a different model for general applications, you can configure a separate Organization vDC using the Reservation Pool allocation model to run only the real-time applications.

The Reservation Pool allocation model is designed to:

- Allow customer organizations full control of the resources being used within their Organization vDC, including specific reservations where required at the VA level, with strong guarantees on the total resources available to the Organization vDC as a whole.
- Allow the provider (the vCloud Director system administrator) to provide very tight SLA guarantees, with the cost being loss of the ability to configure overall resource over-commit. This cost will usually be charged back to the customer.



- Allow resources to be allocated and guaranteed at the Organization vDC level, as well as at the individual VA level, with individual VAs drawing on resources from the Organization vDC's overall reservation as they are run.
- Reservation Pool is the only allocation model that allows Administrators (at either Organization or System level) to access and modify resource reservations on VMs; the other allocation models do not allow this.

In the Reservation Pool model, resources are fully committed to the Organization vDC (drawn from the overall Provider vDC) when the Organization vDC is created. Built in OVA reservations are not modified, as shown in [Table 22](#). This allows the customer Organization to control their own over-commit levels, within their vDC. If resources are over-committed (that is, total reservations becomes higher than the total reservation for the Organization vDC), then VAs will fail to deploy.

### Recommendations:

- The Reservation Pool allocation model is fully supported for Mitel VAs, which have built in resource reservations.
- The Reservation Pool allocation model is ideal for real-time applications, where both CPU and memory reservations are important to guarantee voice quality SLAs. This comes at expense, however, of zero over-commit available to the provider.
- In this model, it may be primarily up to the customer Organization to ensure that they provide enough resources to ensure voice quality. In effect, SLA is customer-controlled, using reservations built into the VAs as they are deployed.
- Alternatively, if the hosting provider is also supplying the VAs the customer Organization is deploying, (they could be selected from a Catalog provided by the host Organization, for example), then specific reservations can be set in advance for customer use. This allows flexibility for setting strict reservations where important, and not setting them where it is not important.
- This allocation policy can be an ideal solution as a voice (or other real-time) application-specific Organization vDC, to supplement other vDCs used by the Organization for less critical needs. For example, the customer can run non-critical applications in a vDC using Allocation Pool or Pay-As-You-Go, and run only the real-time application in a Reservation Pool vDC.

For detailed information on configuring the Reservation Pool allocation model, refer to VMware documentation.

### Effects of other underlying resources

Aside from the allocation model, other underlying resources used to create the Organization vDC can also have large effects on the performance of the deployed virtual appliances.

#### *Storage*

Where storage performance is important to the applications to be run in a particular Organization vDC (for example, NuPoint Virtual), then the Organization vDC should be supported by high performance storage resources.



vCloud Director 5.1 adds the concept of “storage profiles”. These must be configured at the vSphere level for vCloud Director, which uses them to automatically select storage for vDCs, based on the specified profile.

The names you assign to the storage should reflect its performance and/or level of protection. For example, a high performance store, with full network RAID 10 and replication protection might be labeled “Platinum”, the same but with no replication might be “Gold”, mid-performance with RAID 10 protection, “Silver”, and low performance with no RAID 10, “Bronze”.



**Note:** Due to vMotion requirements, storage supporting vCloud Director must be shared storage (SAN, vSAN, NFS, VMware VSA), and must be available on all hosts supporting the vCloud Director provider vDC cluster(s). Host-local storage cannot be used.

### *Network*

The same performance considerations apply within vCloud Director as in the underlying vSphere layer.

Note that vCloud Director requires the use of virtual distributed switches (dvSwitch) in the underlying vSphere networks. Regular vSwitches are not compatible.

### Modifying vApp Resourcing for Deployment Configuration

As noted in “[Deployment differences relative to vSphere](#)” on page 105, when vApps are deployed on vCloud Director, the **Configuration Options** dialog box is not presented as it is in direct vSphere deployments. Therefore, the administrator cannot choose the specific deployment profile to use (Small Business or Enterprise, for example), and resourcing for the vApp may be incorrect for the desired capacity (too small, or unnecessarily large).

This section describes ways to work around this issue.



**Note:** Methods described here can only be fully implemented when the VA or VA Template (Catalog item) are deployed in an Organization vDC configured to use the Reservation Pool allocation model.

To modify the VA resourcing to match the appropriate profile, two methods are available, as follows:

#### *Method 1 - Modify Resourcing in vCloud Director*

In this approach, the VA is brought into a vApp Template. Then it is deployed in a Reservation Pool based vDC and modified. Finally, the VA is added back into the Catalog as a new vApp Template. This may be done by either Organization or System level administrators.

Follow these steps:

1. Upload the VA into the Catalog (or import from vSphere), as described in previous sections. See “[Creating and publishing virtual application Catalog Templates](#)” on page 99.

The Templates resourcing can now be inspected (but not modified), by selecting and opening the vApp, selecting the desired contained VM, and opening the **Properties** dialog

box on the VM. The **Hardware** tab shows the number of vCPUs, memory, and disk assignments; the **Resource Allocation** tab shows CPU and memory reservations, shares, and limits.



**Note:** The **Resource Allocation** tab is available only when the vApp Template is stored on a Reservation Pool vDC.

2. Deploy the vApp Template to MyCloud, as described earlier. See “Deploying and configuring virtual applications from catalogs” on page 104.



**Note: IMPORTANT:** During deployment, at the Network Mapping step, the VM's built-in network interface Source name will be modified to match whatever network is selected to connect the source to. For example, the Source name “LAN” or “WAN” will be overwritten to become whatever the name of the selected destination network is: “LAN” will become “My Organization-internal” (or whatever is selected).

Therefore, it is important to connect to network names that are easily understood when the modified vApp Template is re-deployed at later stages. Preferably, Organization network names should be configured to match the Source names of the VMs to be modified (the network name is also “LAN” or “WAN,” for example).

Organization network names can be modified by either Organization or System-level administrators, under the Organization's **Administration / Org vDC Networks** tab.



**Note: IMPORTANT:** Do not run the deployed vApp (or its VMs) at this stage or configure its operating system (MSL) or any attributes other than resource profile. Any configuration, such as OS-level host name, network configuration, and so on, will be captured in the modified vApp Template Catalog item in later steps, and are likely to be incorrect for the deployment of the modified vApp Template. In this case, the MSL initial configuration will not run (because MSL is already configured).

3. Open the deployed vApp (double-click or right-click **Open**), and open the desired contained VM **Properties** dialog box (double-click or right-click **Properties**).
4. In the **General** tab, rename the VM appropriately.
5. In the **Hardware** tab (see [Figure 18](#) below), modify the Number of vCPUs, Total memory, or increase Disk size as appropriate to the desired profile. If required, additional disks may be added in this step.

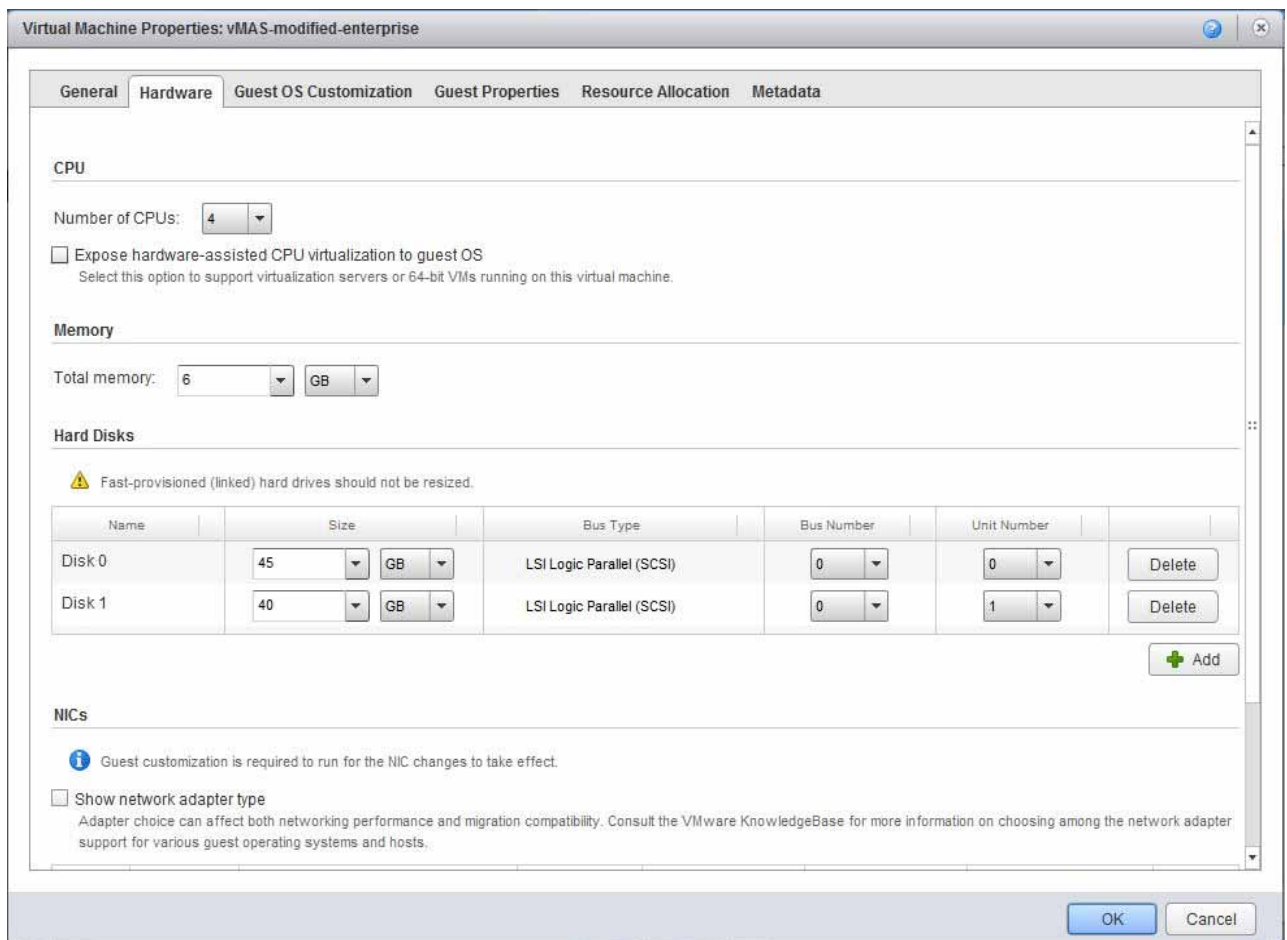


Figure 18: VM Properties - Hardware tab



**Note:** The disk size of an already deployed disk may only be increased, not decreased.



**Note:** If the Organization vDC is configured to enable Fast-Provisioning (linked clone), the existing disk(s) cannot be increased or decreased after the VM is deployed.

Where Table 8 indicates two disks, a new disk must be added to the VM when it is modified. For example, when modifying from MiCollab Virtual or MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual Small Business profile to the corresponding Enterprise profile, an additional disk of the appropriate size must be configured at this step.

If memory is increased, and the corresponding reservation is also to be increased, then the dialog box must be closed (Click **OK**), and then re-opened for the new value to be saved. Do this before moving to the next step (Resource Allocation).

6. In the **Resource Allocation** tab (see Figure 19 below), modify the vCPU Reservation, Priority (shares) and Limit, as well as Memory Reservation, Priority (shares) and Limit, as appropriate for the desired profile. Disk shares and I/O limits cannot be modified.

Click **OK** to save the changes.

The screenshot shows the 'Virtual Machine Properties: vMAS-modified-enterprise' dialog box with the 'Resource Allocation' tab selected. The 'CPU' section has 'Priority' set to 'NORMAL' with 4000 shares, 'Reservation' set to 4000 MHz, and 'Limit' set to 'Unlimited'. The 'Memory' section has 'Priority' set to 'NORMAL' with 61440 shares, 'Reservation' set to 6144 MB, and 'Limit' set to 'Unlimited'. The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Figure 19: VM Properties - Resource Allocation Tab



**Note:** The **Resource Allocation** tab is available only for vApps deployed in a vDC supported by the Reservation Pool allocation model.

7. Add the modified vApp into the Catalog as a vApp Template. Right-click **Add to Catalog** or select the vApp, click **Tools**, and select **Add to Catalog**.

Enter a suitable name for the vApp Template.

Select **Customize VM settings** or **Make identical copy** as appropriate. **Make identical copy** will cause all initial configuration at deploy time to be identical to the settings captured in the Catalog Template; **Customize VM settings** presents **Configure Resources**, **Network Mapping**, and **Custom Properties** steps when vApps are deployed from the Template. **Customize VM settings** is usually the more appropriate.

Click **OK** to complete the process.

8. After completing the vApp Template, inspect the new Catalog item to ensure that it is correct  
To inspect the Catalog item:
  - a. Select and open the vApp Template.
  - b. Select the desired contained VM.
  - c. Open the **Properties** dialog box on the VM.

#### *Method 2 - Import from vSphere*

In this approach, the VA is first deployed at vSphere level, then into vCloud Director as a vApp Template Catalog item. While the number of vCPUs, memory, and disk are preserved under all allocation models, only Reservation Pool-based vDC fully preserves vCPU and memory reservations, as described in Table 22, “Resource Settings vs. Allocation Model,” on page 106 above.



**Note:** This method is available only to system level administrators. Organization level administrators do not have permissions for Import from vSphere.

Follow these steps:

1. Deploy the Virtual Appliance in vSphere:
  - a. In the vSphere **Deploy OVF Template** wizard, in the Deployment Configuration step, select the desired deployment profile for the VA to be created.
  - b. In the vSphere **Deploy OVF Template** wizard, in the Disk Format step, select the appropriate format for the VA to be created, as recommended for that application. Typically, Thick Provisioning is recommended for storage intensive real time applications like MiVoice Business Virtual, NuPoint UM Virtual, and MiCollab Virtual.
2. Import the created VA into a vApp Template Catalog item as previously described in “[Import VM from vSphere](#)” on page 102.
  - a. **Optional:** In the Import VM as a vApp Template dialog, select Move VM. This has the effect of moving the VM to a new location controlled by vCloud Director. This removes the VM from vSphere control as part of the Import operation, saving space.
  - b. **Optional:** Mark the vApp Template as a Gold Master if appropriate.
3. **Optional:** If the VA was copied in [Step 2](#) (not moved), then remove the created VA in vSphere (**Delete from Disk**), unless it is needed for further Importing to other Catalogs. This saves space.
4. After completing the vApp Template, inspect the new Catalog item to ensure that it is correct  
To inspect the Catalog item:
  - a. Select and open the vApp Template.
  - b. Select the desired contained VM.
  - c. Open the **Properties** dialog box on the VM.

### vCloud Director Lease and Lease Expiry

vCloud Director allows control of several aspects of resource leasing policy when an Organization is created and configured. These policies can also be modified, after the Organization is created and is in use, by the system Administrator or the Organization Administrator.

These controls include:

- Maximum vApp run-time lease - how long a deployed VA or vApp will be allowed to run
- Maximum vApp storage lease - how long the VA or vApps storage will be maintained
- vApp Template maximum storage lease - how long a Catalog Template item will be maintained
- vApp and vApp Template storage cleanup - whether expired items will move to the **Expired Items** folder, or be completely removed

When the VA is deployed from the Catalog, the administrator or user can also modify the lease time assigned to the VA, up to the maximums configured for the Organization. After deployment, the administrator or user must periodically reset the leases for the VA to avoid expiry, unless the lease is set to **Never Expires** (recommended for mission-critical VAs). This also applies to Catalog Templates (vApp template lease).

#### *Lease expiry and mission-critical applications*

When the vApp or VA run-time lease expires, the VA will be shut down, potentially interrupting service. The VA can still be re-started from its storage, as long as the vApp storage has not yet expired.

For mission critical VAs—and most Mitel VAs are mission-critical—you must either:

- Set the run-time and storage leases to **Never Expires**, or
- Set up automated processes to monitor and track expiry dates, and automate lease renewal to avoid interruptions due to expired leases.

Robust processes for preventing unplanned and unexpected lease expiry are **strongly recommended**.

### Undeploying virtual applications

To undeploy a Mitel VA under vCloud Director, the administrator selects the specific VA, powers off, and deletes it, as follows:

1. Click **My Cloud**.
2. Click **vApps**.
3. Select the VA.
4. Right-click **Stop** and wait for this to finish.
5. Click **My Cloud**.
6. Click **vApps**.

7. Select the VA.
8. Right-click **Delete**.

Undeploying a VA does not affect other VAs running in the same Organization. Resources are relinquished, allowing other VAs to be started, or granted a larger share of the resources allocated to the Organization vDC.

# Networking and security considerations

vCloud Networking and Security (vCNS), and specifically vCNS, is tightly integrated with vCloud Director, and provides flexibility in the ways Organization networks can be configured. The options are:

- Direct-connected external network

Allows the application to connect directly to an external network, such as an enterprise LAN (private cloud), extended customer WAN (public cloud with MPLS or other VPN support), or public Internet (public cloud or enterprise private cloud).

- Network Address Translation (NAT)-routed external network

Allows connection to external networks only through NAT/firewall. The NAT/firewall is implemented by vCNS, and can be configured by the system or organization administrator for NAT address mapping, firewall rules, and so on.

- Internal network

Isolated, and private to the Organization, with no connection to external networks.

These options can be used in combination for any particular organization.

During Organization network creation, the vCloud Director Create Organization Network Wizard provides some typical setup options. Advanced options are also available, which allow you to configure the same set up steps in finer detail.

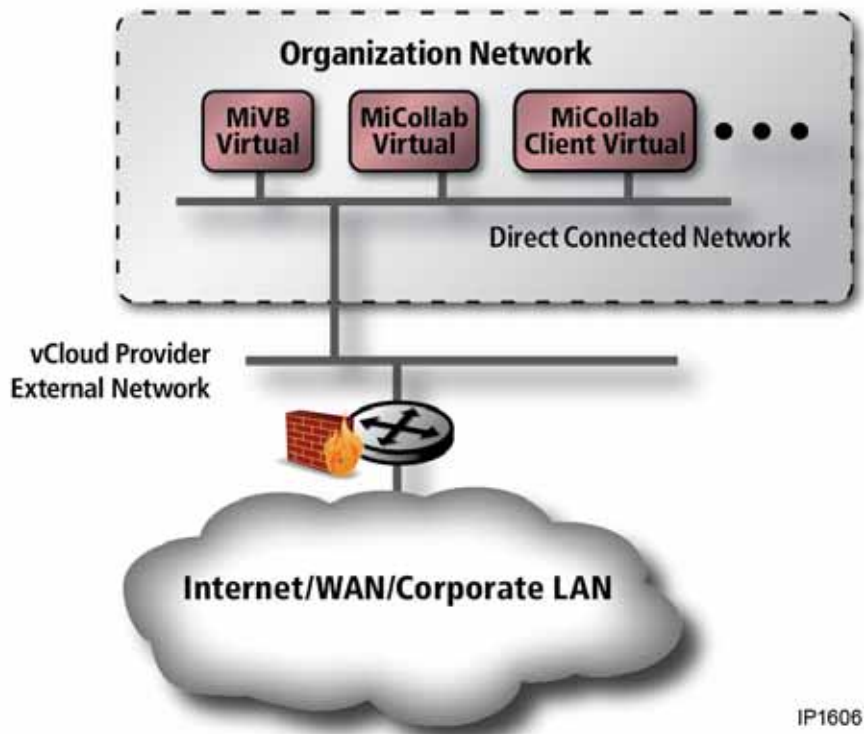
Organization networks are created when Organizations are initially configured or later, when additional networks are created for an existing Organization. These options are discussed in the following subsections.

## Deployment in a direct-connected, flat Organization network

A typical Organization network configuration uses a direct-connected external network, shown in [Figure 20](#). A second isolated internal network is not provided, so this is considered a “flat” topology.

Mitel applications can readily be deployed in this topology, by treating the direct-connected external network as if it were an enterprise LAN. In this case, it is assumed that no MBG-based protection of the Mitel applications is required. Mitel applications are deployed to directly connect to the external network, as is usual in a LAN environment.



**Direct Connected, Flat****Figure 20: Direct connected, flat network topology**

MiVoice Business Express does not fit this network topology. This network topology is appropriate only for stand-alone applications with no MBG protection, and where there is some form of firewall protection provided between the vCloud Director networks and the Internet (or other untrusted network).

**Recommendations:**

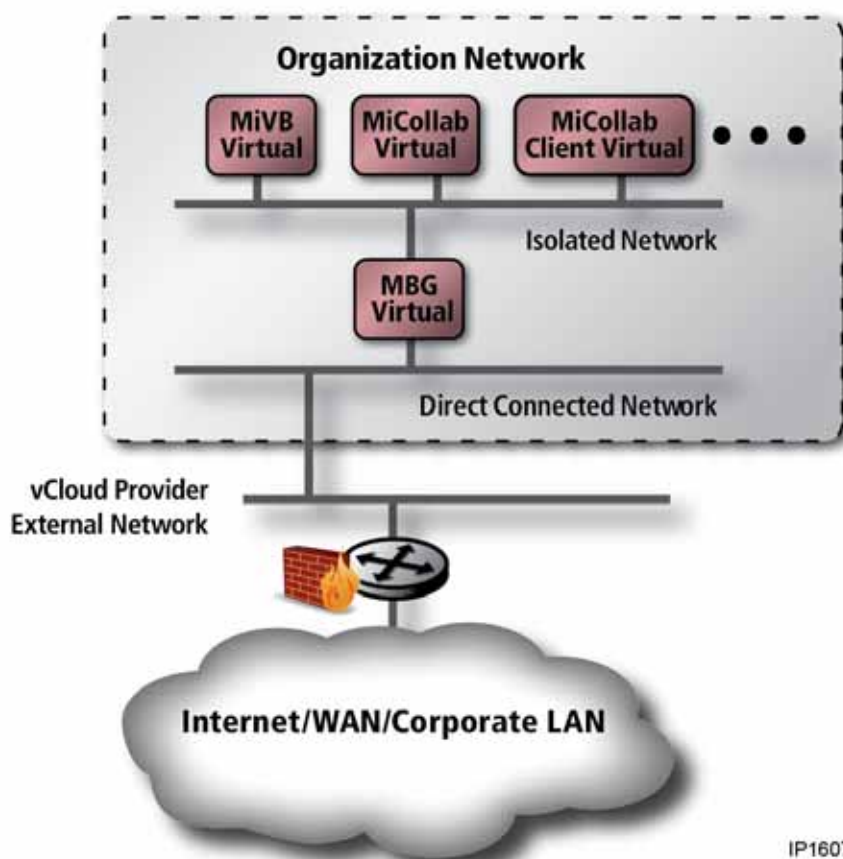
- The direct-connected, flat Organization network topology is recommended for Mitel virtual applications in cases where MBG protection of the applications is not required. Typically, this would be in an Enterprise or SMB private cloud deployment, where the enterprise has direct control over the entire network. In the hosting, public cloud case, the external network must be an extension of the customer WAN, through MPLS or other VPN, for example.
- This topology is not suitable for MiVoice Business Express.
- In many circumstances this topology is not available for deployment due to hosting provider restrictions, for example. When this is the case, another direct-connected (layered) topology or a NAT-routed topology should be used.

## Deployment in direct-connected, layered Organization network

In this typical Organization network configuration, applications can connect directly to the external network (where appropriate), with no NAT/firewall in the path, and a second isolated internal network is provided, as shown in Figure 21.

Mitel applications can readily be deployed in this topology, by treating the direct-connected external network as if it were the Internet. It may be any of the following:

- Live Internet connection (private cloud DMZ, or public cloud, hosting-provided Internet)
- Enterprise LAN (private cloud)
- The direct connection may map to an external-facing network for a particular customer (public cloud/hosting). In this case, the external network may be an extension of the customer WAN, for example, through MPLS or other VPN.

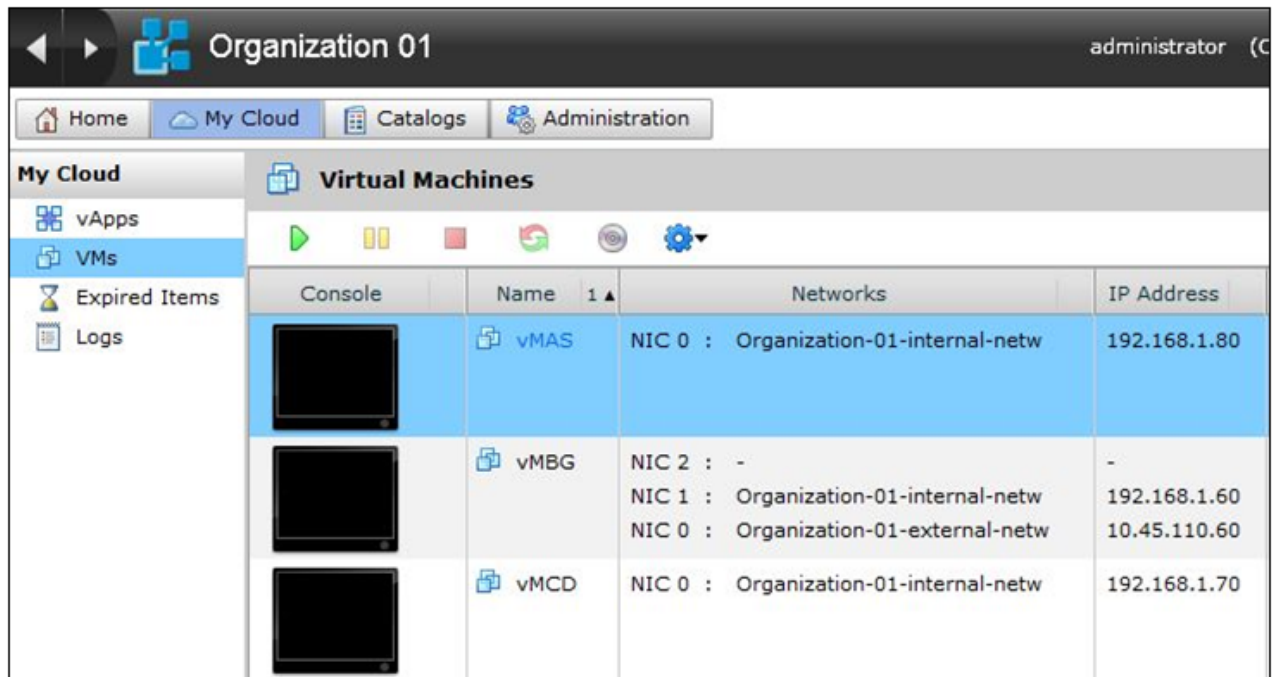


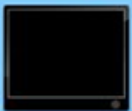


**Figure 21: Direct connected, layered network topology**

In this case, MBG Virtual is deployed in server-gateway mode, bridging between the direct-connected external network and the internal network. This provides the necessary security to the other Mitel applications, which are deployed on the isolated internal network. External devices such as IP Phones are configured in teleworker mode, following normal MBG deployment rules. Other MBG services, such as web proxy, may also be enabled following normal MBG deployment rules.

Alternatively, MiVoice Business Express may be deployed, with its WAN interface connected to the external network, and its LAN interfaces connected to the isolated internal network.

An example vCloud Director configuration for this is shown in [Figure 22](#) below. This is a screen capture from vCloud Director **Organization > My Cloud > VM view**.



| Console                                                                            | Name | Networks                                                                                    | IP Address                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|   | vMAS | NIC 0 : Organization-01-internal-netw                                                       | 192.168.1.80                      |
|   | vMBG | NIC 2 : -<br>NIC 1 : Organization-01-internal-netw<br>NIC 0 : Organization-01-external-netw | -<br>192.168.1.60<br>10.45.110.60 |
|  | vMCD | NIC 0 : Organization-01-internal-netw                                                       | 192.168.1.70                      |

**Figure 22: Deployment Configuration in Direct Connected Layered Topology**

#### Recommendations:

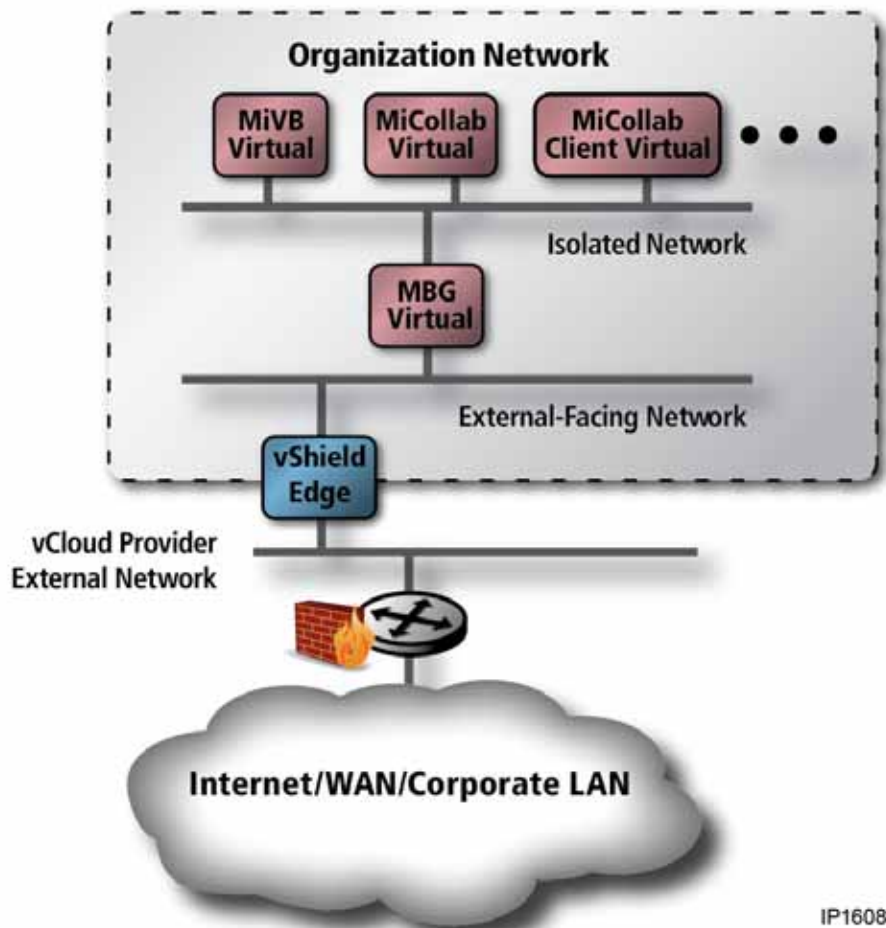
- Direct-connected, layered Organization network topology is a supported and recommended approach for Mitel virtual applications for which MBG protection is required.
- This is preferred over the NAT-routed topology (described in the next section), because it requires reduced configuration overhead for the vCNS component (which is not required in this topology), and reduced risk of vCNS adding to media flow latency and jitter (and potentially reduced voice quality).
- In some circumstances, this topology may not be available for deployment, due to hosting provider restrictions, for example. In that case, the NAT-routed topology should be used.

### Deployment in NAT-routed Organization network

A typical Organization network configuration using NAT/firewall routed external network access provides external network access through a NAT/firewall, plus internal Organization communication through an isolated internal network, as shown in [Figure 23](#).



**Note:** In a MiCloud environment, MiCloud Management Gateway can be used to replace vShield Edge/vCNS. MiCloud Management Gateway supports connections for up to 100 customers.



**Figure 23: NAT routed, layered topology**

In the NAT-routed topology, Mitel applications are deployed behind the vCNS NAT/Firewall, however, some may not operate properly due to the address translation. Operation of Mitel applications behind NAT is application-specific, and the same as the behavior of the application behind a physical NAT device. Refer to the application-specific documentation for details.

The following configurations are supported.

#### Approach 1: Supported by MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual

To support this network topology, MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual is deployed between the external-facing network and the isolated internal network. In effect, MBG Virtual is in series with a vCNS NAT/Firewall.

MBG Virtual is configured in server-gateway mode. The vCNS NAT/Firewall is configured to provide a 1:1 mapping of an externally visible, public Internet IP address to the MBG Virtual WAN interface (no port mapping permitted), following normal MBG firewall configuration rules. If MCA is also required, then two address mappings are required. Other UCC applications are then deployed on the internal network only. MiVoice Border Gateway allows IP Phones in Teleworker mode to connect to the MCD, and other applications are connected to the internal network.

An example vCloud Director configuration for this is shown in [Figure 24](#) below. This screen capture is taken from the **vCloud Director Organization > My Cloud > VM view**.

| Console | Name | Networks                                                                                    | IP Address                          |
|---------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|         | vMAS | NIC 0 : Organization-01-internal-netw                                                       | 192.168.1.80                        |
|         | vMBG | NIC 2 : -<br>NIC 1 : Organization-01-internal-netw<br>NIC 0 : Organization-01-external-netw | -<br>192.168.1.60<br>192.168.100.60 |
|         | vMCD | NIC 0 : Organization-01-internal-netw                                                       | 192.168.1.70                        |

**Figure 24: MBG in Series Configuration in NAT Routed Layered Topology**

#### Approach 2: Supported by MiVoice Business Express

Deployment of MiVoice Business Express in this network topology is completely equivalent to the MBG Virtual in series with vCNS approach above. In this case, the MiVoice Business Express WAN interface is connected to the external facing network, and the LAN interfaces are connected to the isolated internal network. The vCNS NAT/Firewall is configured in the same way as for the MBG Virtual approach.

#### Recommendations:

- The NAT-routed/layered Organization network topology is a supported and recommended approach for Mitel virtual applications in which MBG protection is required.
- The direct connected/layered Organization network topology described in [“Deployment in direct-connected, layered Organization network”](#) on page 120 would generally be preferred, if possible, due to added complexity in configuration imposed by adding NAT in the path and the risk of reduced voice quality due to latency and jitter possibly added by the Edge component (considered low risk).



# Chapter 7

## INSTALLING AND UPGRADING





# Installing Mitel virtual appliances and applications

Mitel virtual products installation differs between VMware deployments and Hyper-V deployments.

## Deploying Mitel virtual appliances in Hyper-V

See “Installing and upgrading on Hyper-V” on page 56.

## Deploying Mitel virtual appliances in VMware

Mitel virtual appliances that are delivered as an OVA file must be deployed as an OVA. The OVA packaging of the Mitel virtual appliance includes additional components (VMware Tools and drivers, for example), and settings such as resource dimensioning, that are required for proper operation.



**Note:** Manually installing MSL in a VM, and then manually installing the corresponding Mitel virtual appliance is not supported.



**Note:** MiContact Center Office: On first configuration after OVA file deployment, configure the network settings. After new network settings have been applied, the **Network Configuration** screen will no longer be available. In the case of any network issues (IP address conflict, for example) close the installer window (click **Cancel**) and troubleshoot the network settings from the **Windows Network and Sharing Center**. Then the MiContact Center Office setup wizard can be run and the configuration can be resumed.

## Disk provisioning

Mitel virtual appliances that require low latency for voice streaming (such as MiVoice Business Virtual, NuPoint Virtual, and MiCollab Virtual) require the use of thick provisioning of the disks. Testing has found that the additional run-time overhead from using thin-provisioning noticeably affects voice quality.

Thick-provisioned disks may be either eager-zeroed or lazy-zeroed. Mitel recommends the use of lazy-zeroed disks.

Lazy-zeroed disks are zeroed on the first write to each block. The first write to each block is much slower than every successive write. Conversely, eager-zeroed disks have all their blocks zeroed during deployment when the disk is created for the virtual appliance.

Eager-zeroed disks take longer to deploy (on the order of a few minutes depending on the size of the disk), but do not risk slow disk performance at random times during run-time, as not-yet-used disk blocks are zeroed.

Refer to VMware Knowledge Base article 1011170, for instructions for determining whether the disk of an already-installed VM is lazy-zeroed or eager-zeroed.

### Network driver

Mitel virtual appliances require low latency for voice streaming. Therefore, they must use the VMXNET3 network driver.

## Deploying Mitel OVAs

These are the basic instructions for deploying Mitel virtual appliances. Mitel virtual appliance OVAs (as opposed to VMware-ready products) contain Mitel Standard Linux, the VMware Tools, and the Mitel product files.



**Note:** If you are installing multiple Mitel vApps, it is strongly recommended that you deployed them one at a time. This will avoid having the guest properties for all of the vApps displayed at the same time, which can cause confusion in completing the deployment.

There may be product-specific settings that apply to the OVA you are deploying. There may also be additional configuration steps to be performed after the OVA is deployed. Refer to the product-specific documentation for the details.



**Note:**

- See Table 8, “VMware required resource reservation and allocation,” on page 22 for detailed resource and capacity information.
- Refer to the product-specific installation guide for details and limitations particular to installing the product OVA, and for post-install and configuration instructions.

The following procedure is an example of how to deploy vMiCollab using the vSphere 5.5 web interface to an ESXi host via vCenter Manager. Note that the screens that are displayed during the deployment wizard are dependent on your network configuration and VMware environment. Details of the deployment for MiVoice Business, MiVoice Border Gateway, and MiVoice Business Express are added in.





**Note:** It is strongly recommended that the deployment be done using the VMware Web Client, as all the new features used for Mitel OVA deployment may not be available in the older client.

1. Obtain the Mitel OVA for the product you are deploying.



**CAUTION:** Do not install Mitel Blades from any CD ROM drive that may be attached to the virtual machine.

2. Log into the vSphere Web Client with your user name and password.
3. In the vSphere Client, In the upper right corner of the tool bar, click . Ensure that you have installed the latest VMware Client Integration Plugin.
4. In the left-hand menu, click **vCenter Inventory Lists**.

5. Click **Virtual Machines**.
6. On the **Objects** tab, click  **Deploy OVF Template**.
  - If you are using the desktop client, click **File > Deploy OVF Template**.
7. If prompted, click to allow “Client Integration Access Control”.
8. Select the Source of the OVF template file (OVA file extension):
  - **URL**  
If the OVF template file is on the Internet or accessible through a web browser; enter the URL of the location of the file.
  - **Local file**  
If the OVF template file was downloaded to the local computer or to a network share drive, click **Browse** to locate the file.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Review the OVF template details and click **Next**.
11. Click **Accept** to accept the End User License Agreements and click **Next**.

The **Deploy OVF Template Name and Location** screen appears.

12. Enter a meaningful name for the product instance, or accept the default name. In **Inventory Location**, you must select a target folder if you are deploying to a vCenter Server.



**Note:** When deploying in a vCenter environment, the wizard may prompt for a **Data store** and **Network Mapping** if several options are available. Contact your Data Center administrator for details about which Datastore or Network Mapping to use.

13. Click **Next**. The **Select configuration** screen appears.
14. Select the required deployment configuration, if applicable, for your site from the drop-down menu. Refer to the product engineering guidelines for the user capacities supported by each configuration. See [Table 9, “Engineering Guidelines documents for Mitel virtual applications,”](#) on page 33 for the name of the engineering guidelines document you need.

**Table 23: Selecting deployment configurations - by product**

| PRODUCT                 | DEPLOYMENT CONFIGURATION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MIVOICE BUSINESS</b> | <p>Select <b>Small business</b>, <b>Mid-Enterprise</b>, or <b>Enterprise</b> as appropriate from the <b>Configuration</b> drop-down list.</p> <p>After you select a deployment configuration, user limits and required hardware resources are displayed.</p> |
| <b>MICOLLAB</b>         | <p>In MAS Release 5.0, the Enterprise configuration supported up to 1500 users.</p> <p>If you are upgrading from MAS Release 5.0 to MiCollab Release 7.x, select the Mid-market configuration for a site up to 1500 users.</p>                               |

**Table 23: Selecting deployment configurations - by product**

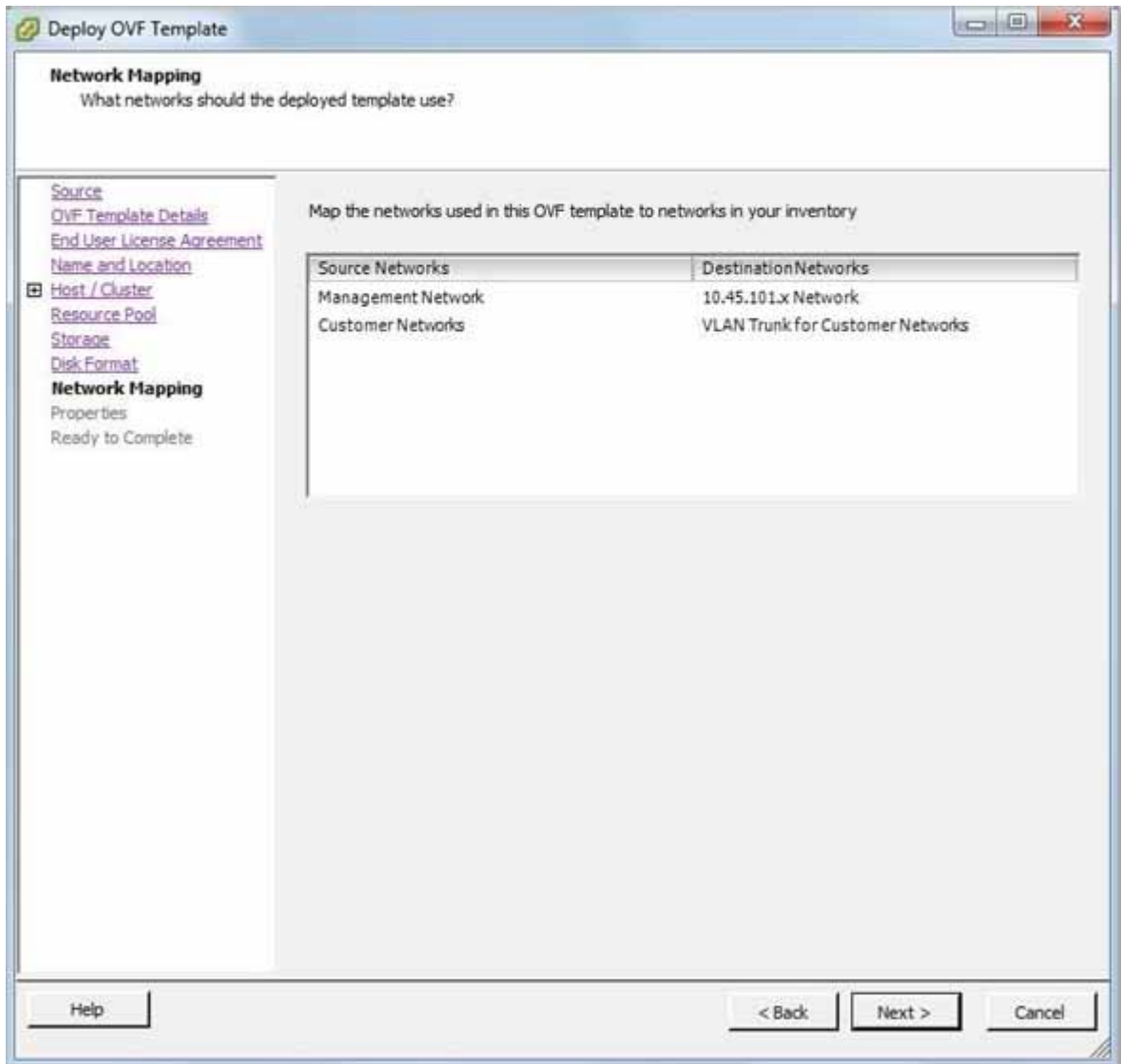
| PRODUCT                         | DEPLOYMENT CONFIGURATION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                 | <p>To support a large Enterprise (5000-user multi-application capacity or 5000-user single application capacity) you must manually increase the VMware resources for the MiCollab virtual machine. Deploy the OVA using the <b>Enterprise</b> configuration.</p> <p>Before you power up the virtual machine, edit the virtual machine settings and increase the Virtual Hardware resources to the requirements specified in Table 8, “VMware required resource reservation and allocation,” on page 22. Then power up the virtual machine and proceed with configuration.</p> |
| <b>MIVoice Border Gateway</b>   | <p>Choose the required deployment configuration for your site from the drop-down menu: <b>Small Business</b> or <b>Enterprise</b>.</p> <p>After you select a deployment configuration, user limits and required hardware resources are displayed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>MIVoice Business Express</b> | <p>Select <b>Small business</b> or <b>Mid Market</b> as appropriate for your site from the <b>Configuration</b> drop-down menu.</p> <p>After you select a configuration, the user limits and required hardware resources are displayed on the screen.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

15. Click **Next**. The **Select a resource** screen appears. When installing in a vCenter Server, select the Resource Pool for the virtual instance of the OVA. This page is displayed only if the cluster contains a resource pool.
16. If you are deploying the Mitel vApp in a vCenter Server, select the Host/Cluster for the vMiCollab instance. The Host/Cluster screen only appears if you are deploying on a vCenter Server.
17. Click **Next**. The **Select storage** screen appears.
18. Set the virtual disk format to **Thick Provisioned Lazy Zeroed**.
19. Select a destination Datastore.
20. Click **Next**. The **Setup networks** screen appears. This screen is different for each of the Mitel products that use the custom **Setup networks** screen.

If the network defined in the OVF template does not match the name of the template on the host to which you are deploying, you are prompted to configure the Network Mapping. The required settings may be different, depending on your deployment configuration.

- **Network Edge (Server-Gateway) Mode:** In this configuration mode, the server functions as a firewall/Internet gateway with two Ethernet interfaces. One interface is connected to the internal network (LAN) while the other is connected to the external network (Internet). Select the destination LAN and WAN networks for the OVF template. These are the “Associated Networks” that are assigned in the LAN and WAN IP Pools. You must assign the LAN and WAN destinations to different networks.
- **LAN Only (Server-only) Mode:** In this configuration mode, the server is only connected to the internal network (LAN). For this mode, select only a destination LAN network for the OVF template. The WAN destination is ignored.

- LAN (Optional): This interface can be used to connect a management application or to route the SIP Proxy to an isolated SIP Proxy network.
- If you are deploying the MiCloud Management Gateway:
  - The MiCloud Management Gateway has two interfaces, **Management Network** and **Customer Network**. You must map **Customer Network** to a VLAN trunk.
  - If a dvSwitch is configured, ensure that it is selected.



21. Click **Next**.

If you are installing MiCollab, MiVoice Business, MiVoice Business Express, MiVoice Border Gateway, or MiCloud Management Gateway, continue through the **Properties** screen instructions.

If you are installing any other Mitel OVA, skip to [Step 23](#).

22. For certain Mitel appliances, the **Properties** screen appears. The **Properties** screen only appears for deployments that use vCenter. These are the Mitel virtual appliances that use the additional **Properties** screen.

- MiCollab
- MiVoice Business
- MiVoice Business Express
- MiVoice Border Gateway
- MiCloud Management Gateway

You use this screen to configure the MSL operating system parameters. Complete the fields in this screen using the information that you recorded in preparing for installation. Mandatory fields are highlighted with a red border. “[Properties page - Networking settings by OVA type](#)” on page 133 describes how to fill in the **Properties** screen for each product.



**CAUTION: Make sure to enter the correct values for each of the properties.**

1. If any mandatory property values are missing, the wizard finishes, but the virtual appliance will not be able to boot. A corresponding error message appears, and you will have to re-start the OVF deployment from the beginning.
2. If all mandatory property values are set, but one or more of the values are invalid, the Mitel Virtual Framework (MVF) blade attempts to retrieve the settings it can, and set them as defaults for the MSL console. You will have to set parameters using the MSL console configuration procedures. See the product-specific guide for details.
3. You can use this screen only when setting up the LAN IP and WAN IP addresses for the initial deployment of the appliance. After initial boot-up, you must use the MSL server console for the product to modify the LAN IP or WAN IP addresses.

**Table 24: Properties page - Common settings**

| PROPERTIES SECTION  | FIELD               | FIELD DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>LOCALIZATION</b> |                     |                                                                                                                                                            |
|                     | Timezone            | Select the MSL time zone setting.<br><b>Default:</b> North America.                                                                                        |
|                     | Keyboard            | Select the keyboard used by the MSL console.                                                                                                               |
|                     | Restore from backup | Select to open the MSL console and step through a database restore. See the <i>MSL Installation and Administration Guide</i> .<br><b>Default:</b> Disabled |
| <b>APPLICATION</b>  |                     |                                                                                                                                                            |
|                     | Password            | This is the initial administrator password.                                                                                                                |
|                     | Hostname            | The host name to be used by the virtual machine. The default is <b>MiVB</b> .<br><b>Note:</b> This field can be left blank for template creation.          |

Table 24: Properties page - Common settings

| PROPERTIES SECTION | FIELD                   | FIELD DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                    | Domain name             | Specifies the domain name for this host.<br>The default is mycompany.local.<br><b>Note:</b> This field can be left blank for template creation. |
|                    | License key             | License key for the application.                                                                                                                |
|                    | DNS server IP           | The IP address of the DNS Server                                                                                                                |
|                    | Remote network address  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|                    | Remote network net mask |                                                                                                                                                 |



**Note:** To create a blank template for cloning, leave the following fields empty: **Administrator Password, Hostname, Domain Name, LAN and WAN IP addresses.** After you create the clone, you must complete these fields before you can proceed with deployment. You cannot clone an active (deployed) virtual machine.

Table 25: Properties page - Networking settings by OVA type

| MITEL PRODUCT                        | FIELD NAME                 | FIELD DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MIVoice BUSINESS FIELDS</b>       |                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                      | IP Address                 | The IP address to be used for the local (LAN) interface.<br>This field can be left blank when creating a template, but must be set in the VM before powering on the VM. ( <b>Edit Settings &gt; Option &gt; vApp Options &gt; Properties</b> )<br>No checking is done that this IP address is in the attached network or that it is available. so check your entry carefully. |
|                                      | LAN Netmask                | The netmask for the local subnet. Checking is done to make sure that this is a valid IP address, but not that this is a valid network, so check your entry carefully.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                      | Default Gateway IP Address | The Gateway IP address.<br>There is no check that this is a valid gateway or that the IP address exists in the subnet, so check your entry carefully.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>MIVoice BORDER GATEWAY FIELDS</b> |                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                      | LAN IP Address             | The IP address of the LAN side of the MiVoice Border Gateway.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                      | LAN Net mask               | The net mask for the LAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                      | WAN IP Address             | The IP address of the WAN side of the MiVoice Border Gateway.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                      | WAN Netmask                | The net mask of the WAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                      | Optional LAN IP            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                      | Optional LAN Netmask       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                      | Default Gateway IP         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

**Table 25: Properties page - Networking settings by OVA type**

| MITEL<br>PRODUCT                       | FIELD NAME                                             | FIELD DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MICOLLAB FIELDS</b>                 |                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                        | LAN IP Address<br>(IP address of the MiCollab Virtual) | <p>The IP address of the local (LAN) interface. This must be a valid IP address on the local LAN.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can leave this field blank if you are creating a blank template of the OVA file for cloning. However, you must set it before powering up the virtual appliance. You can set this IP address from vSphere Client.</p> <p>Right-click on the MiCollab and click <b>Edit Settings</b>. Click the <b>Options</b> tab, click <b>Properties</b> and enter the LAN IP Address.</p>                                                                                                                            |
|                                        | LAN Netmask                                            | The netmask of the LAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                        | WAN IP Address (Optional)                              | <p>For Network Edge (Server-gateway) deployments, record the IP address of the external (WAN) interface. This must be a valid IP address on external WAN.</p> <p>For LAN only (Server-only) deployments, use an IP address of 0.0.0.0.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can leave this field blank if you are creating a blank template of the OVA file for cloning. However, you must set it before powering up the virtual appliance. You can set this address from vSphere Client. Right-click on the MiCollab and click <b>Edit Settings</b>. Click the <b>Options</b> tab, click <b>Properties</b> and enter the WAN IP Address.</p> |
|                                        | WAN Netmask (Optional)                                 | Enter the Netmask of the WAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                        | 2nd WAN Address                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                        | Default Gateway IP Address                             | <p>Record the Gateway IP address. For Server-gateway deployments this gateway typically points to the Internet.</p> <p>For Server-only deployments, this gateway typically points to a LAN router.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>MIVOICE BUSINESS EXPRESS FIELDS</b> |                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                        | LAN IP Address<br>(IP address of the vMiCollab)        | <p>The IP address of the local (LAN) interface. This must be a valid IP address on the local LAN.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can leave this field blank if you are creating a blank template of the OVA file for cloning. However, you must set it before powering up the virtual appliance. You can set this IP address from vSphere Client.</p> <p>Right-click on the MiCollab and click <b>Edit Settings</b>. Click the <b>Options</b> tab, click <b>Properties</b> and enter the LAN IP Address.</p>                                                                                                                            |
|                                        | LAN Netmask                                            | The Netmask of the LAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |



Table 25: Properties page - Networking settings by OVA type

| MITEL<br>PRODUCT                         | FIELD NAME                 | FIELD DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                          | WAN IP Address (Optional)  | <p>For Network Edge (Server-gateway) deployments, record the IP address of the external (WAN) interface. This must be a valid IP address on external WAN.</p> <p>For LAN only (Server-only) deployments, use an IP address of 0.0.0.0.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can leave this field blank if you are creating a blank template of the OVA file for cloning. However, you must set it before powering up the virtual appliance. You can set this address from vSphere Client. Right-click on the MiCollab and click <b>Edit Settings</b>. Click the <b>Options</b> tab, click <b>Properties</b> and enter the WAN IP Address.</p> |
|                                          | WAN Netmask (Optional)     | Record the Netmask of the WAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                          | LAN (Optional)             | Network interface that can be used to connect a management application or to route the SIP Proxy to an isolated SIP proxy network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                          | Default Gateway IP Address | <p>Record the Gateway IP address. For Server-gateway deployments this gateway typically points to the Internet.</p> <p>For Server-only deployments, this gateway typically points to a LAN router.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>MICLOUD MANAGEMENT GATEWAY FIELDS</b> |                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                          | Management IP Address      | <p>The Management IP Address for the Virtual Machine must be a valid unused address on the Management Network that is being used.</p> <p>For example, 10.45.101.185 is a valid address on 10.45.101.x network.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                          | Management Netmask         | This is the netmask for the management interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                          | Default Gateway Address    | This address typically points to the router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

**Notes:**

1. IP addresses must be specified for the LAN, WAN, and Optional LAN; otherwise, the virtual appliance will not power on. If you are deploying the virtual machine in LAN only (server-only) mode, set the WAN IP address to 0.0.0.0.
2. For Network Edge (Server-Gateway) deployments, ensure that the LAN IP and WAN IP addresses are on different subnets and the Gateway IP address is on the subnet of the WAN IP address.
3. You can use this screen only when setting up the LAN IP and WAN IP addresses for the initial deployment of the appliance. After initial boot-up, you must use the MiCollab server console interface to modify the LAN IP or WAN IP addresses.

23. Click **Next**. The **Ready to Complete** screen appears.

24. Review the information and click **Finish**. vSphere starts the deployment of the Mitel vApp on the server. Progress is indicated in the upper right panel of the screen.

25. After the *OVA template file has been deployed*, the new virtual machine appears in the inventory list in the left side navigation pane.
26. Do one of the following:
  - If you deployed the vApp on vSphere vCenter and used the **Properties** screen to configure the MSL Operating System parameters, continue with configuring the vApp. See the specific vApp deployment or installation guide for application configuration details.
  - If you did not use vSphere vCenter, you must configure the MSL Operating System parameters. See the specific vApp deployment or installation guide for MSL configuration details.

## Upgrading Mitel virtual appliances and applications

How to upgrade Mitel virtual appliances and applications depends on whether they are installed in a VMware environment or a Hyper-V environment, and whether a minor or major upgrade.

### Upgrading on Hyper-V

Hyper-V installation and upgrades follow the physical model. Refer to the installation guides for the specific product or application to perform upgrades.

### Upgrading on VMware

Mitel virtual appliances include three components, all of which must be considered when making upgrade decisions:

- the virtual application
- the Mitel Virtual Framework (MVF) blade
- the Mitel Standard Linux (MSL) OS



**Note:** All products use MSL except for MiContact Center Office, which runs on Microsoft® Windows®.

When upgrading a virtual appliance, there are two options.

- The new OVA can be downloaded and deployed into the Virtual Infrastructure, with an MSL data backup/restore (for MSL-based virtual appliances) used to move the data from the old virtual appliance to the new virtual appliance.
- The application's Blades can be upgraded individually through the MSL Blades panel, in the **Install Applications** tab.



**Note:** The Blade upgrade is not available if the OVA dimensions have changed. If the OVA dimensions have changed in the release, upgrade by installing the new OVA.

Refer to the Installation and Maintenance Guides and Release Notes for product-specific guidance.

Follow these upgrade guidelines:

- Use Blade upgrades of the MVF, MSL, and virtual application for minor releases and Service Pack (SP) releases.
- Use an OVA upgrade for major releases (the first two digits of the version number changes between old and new loads).

There may occasionally be releases where something in the OVA packaging itself is modified and an OVA upgrade is required. In such cases, this requirement will be highlighted in the Release Notes.

### Software upgrades

You upgrade each Mitel virtual appliance individually, using Mitel upgrade procedures. VMware vCenter Update Manager is not supported for Mitel virtual applications. Log and core files must be backed up separately if you want to keep them.

Do not update the virtual appliance manually. Manual updates miss changes that affect the virtualization-specific aspects of the product, such as resource reservation changes, VMware Tools updates, and hooks to the VMware environment. Following the procedures in this section will ensure that any virtualization-specific changes are applied.

Use these rules when you upgrade Mitel applications:

Blade upgrade method - for minor release and Service Pack release (within the same release):

1. Back up the existing version for disaster recovery purposes, using the product-specific backup method.
2. Power down the virtual machine.
3. Apply the appropriate upgrade license, at the AMC, to the existing ARID for the Virtual Appliance.
  - For MiCollab, select **Upgrade MiCollab** from the server console.
  - For other applications, start the upgrade from the **Blades** panel in the server manager.
4. After OVA deployment, ensure that your virtual machine has the resources required for the new release, as appropriate for your environment. The OVA deployment will set default values that may need adjustment for your specific needs.
5. After the first AMC synch has occurred, verify that the upgraded licenses have been correctly applied.

OVA Upgrade method - for major release upgrades, or as indicated in the product release notes:

1. Back up the existing version, using the MSL backup method.
2. Power down the virtual machine.
3. Apply the appropriate upgrade license, at the AMC, to the existing ARID for the Virtual Appliance.
4. Deploy a new virtual appliance using the new OVA file for the upgrade version of the virtual appliance.
5. After OVA deployment, ensure that your virtual machine has the resources required for the new release, as appropriate for your environment. The OVA deployment will set default values that may need adjustment for your specific needs.
6. Restore the backup data. The deployment process prompts you for the backup file to restore.
7. After the restore is complete, and the first AMC synch has occurred, verify that the upgraded licenses have been correctly applied.



**Note:** MCD Release 6.0+ and MiVoice Business Virtual: Each MiVoice Business Virtual requires two IP addresses, one for MSL and one for MCD.

MCD Release 5.x and previous: Each vMCD requires five IP addresses, one for MSL and 4 contiguous IP addresses for the MCD space.



**CAUTION:** Ensure that there are no IP address duplications in the network.

VMware snapshot is recommended only for use during a system upgrade, and only when the VM is powered down. You can take a snapshot before starting the upgrade, when the system is out of service. If there is a problem with the upgrade, you can revert to the snapshot to try again. After the upgrade is complete and verified, you must remove the snapshot. This ensures adequate performance for voice-intensive Mitel virtual appliances. It is not necessary to clear the hardware ID on the AMC.



**Note:** Do not restore MSL to your virtual machine. This is not supported.

### OVA upgrade advantages

The advantages to upgrading by deploying a new OVA are:

- This is often the faster upgrade method for applications with many blades (such as NuPoint UM Virtual, for example).
- This is a well-understood upgrade method for Virtual Infrastructure administrators familiar with VMware.
- The new OVA will have a new file system, free from fragmentation, corruption, and obsolete files, that may have accumulated over a long run time in the old VM.
- The new OVA is guaranteed to have a tested lineup of software components that are known to work together.
- The old VM can be kept in a shut down state until the new upgraded virtual appliance is verified to be working properly. In the event of a problem with the new virtual appliance, the old virtual appliance can be powered up in seconds and be back in service, exactly as it was before the upgrade was started.
- Any changes to the configuration of the virtual appliance (in the OVA), such as revised resource reservations or updated VMware Tools, will be deployed in this approach, but not in the Blade-upgrade approach.



**Note:** Use of the VMware vCenter Update Manager is not supported.

### MSL application blade upgrade advantages

The advantages of using Blade upgrades are:

- This is often the faster upgrade method for small applications.
- This is a familiar upgrade method for experienced MSL Administrators.
- All logs, core files, and so on, on the existing system are retained in their current locations.

### VMware virtual hardware versions

VMware ESXi 6.0 introduces Virtual Hardware version 11, whereas earlier versions of ESXi support earlier virtual hardware versions. Since VMware does not provide backward compatibility for virtual hardware versions, VMs running on hardware version 9 cannot run on

previous versions of ESXi. In a mixed environment, this will affect which servers vMotion or HA can relocate each VM to, complicating operation of the virtual infrastructure.

Virtual hardware version 10 is not supported due to issues with some versions of vSphere client.

All Mitel virtual appliances can be deployed, and will run, on virtual hardware versions 7, 8, or 9. Current release Mitel virtual appliances are packaged to automatically deploy using the highest available virtual machine version available on the ESXi host they are initially deployed on.

If you are deploying on a mixed environment—a cluster containing multiple different ESXi versions—start by deploying on a host server running the lowest ESXi version available within the cluster. This will allow vMotion and HA operations on all hosts in the cluster.



**Note:** Under some circumstances, newer versions of ESXi may prevent normal virtual machine startup due to interactive prompting and other issues that appear if they are not running the latest virtual hardware version available on the host. This can affect Power on, vMotion, HA, and other availability features. Virtual machine version upgrade to the latest available version fixes these issues. These are not Mitel-specific problems, but can affect any applications running on ESXi.

It is strongly recommended that you upgrade the virtual hardware of deployed Mitel virtual machines to the latest available on the host ESXi. After the upgrade is done, you cannot downgrade to an earlier Virtual Machine Version that may be required for running on older ESXi versions.

Refer to VMware documentation for performing the upgrades, and for more information about ESXi/Virtual Machine version compatibility.

For a definitive listing of VMware virtual hardware compatibility, refer to [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\\_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1003746](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1003746).

**Table 26: Virtual Hardware support by Mitel virtual appliance**

|                                                   |         | VMWARE HARDWARE VERSION<br>IN OVA |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------|
| CURRENT RELEASES                                  |         |                                   |
| MiVoice Business Virtual                          | 8.0     | 7, 8, 9, 11                       |
| MiCollab Virtual                                  | 7.3     | 7, 8, 9, 11                       |
| NuPoint UM Virtual                                | 8.3     | 7, 8, 9, 11                       |
| MiCollab Client Virtual                           | 7.3     | 7, 8, 9, 11                       |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual                    | 9.4     | 7, 8, 9, 11                       |
| MiContact Center Business Virtual                 | 8.1 SPx | 7, 8, 9                           |
| MiVoice Business Express                          | 7.3     | 7, 8, 9, 11                       |
| MiContact Center Enterprise<br>(formerly Solidus) | 9.2     | 7, 8, 9                           |
| MiContact Center Office                           | 6.1 SP1 | 7, 8, 9                           |
| Oria Virtual                                      | 5.3 SPx | 7, 8, 9                           |

**Table 26: Virtual Hardware support by Mitel virtual appliance**

|                            |     | VMWARE HARDWARE VERSION<br>IN OVA |
|----------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|
| MiCloud Management Gateway | 5.0 | 7, 8, 9, 11                       |
| LBG                        | 3.5 | not supported                     |
| Enterprise Manager         | 9.0 | not supported                     |

## VMware software and versions

Not all versions of VMware components are compatible with each other. Refer to the “VMware Product Interoperability Matrixes” at the VMware Web site:  
[http://partnerweb.vmware.com/comp\\_guide2/sim/interop\\_matrix.php](http://partnerweb.vmware.com/comp_guide2/sim/interop_matrix.php)

**Table 27: VMware software versions by Mitel virtual appliance versions**

|                                     |                | VSPHERE WEB<br>CLIENT <sup>1</sup> |     | ESXI |     |     |     |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|-----|------|-----|-----|-----|
|                                     |                | 6.0                                | 5.5 | 6.0  | 5.5 | 5.1 | 5.0 |
| <b>CURRENT RELEASES AND UPDATES</b> |                |                                    |     |      |     |     |     |
| MiVoice Business Virtual            | 8.0            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   |     |
| MiCollab Virtual                    | 7.3            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   |     |
| NuPoint UM                          | 8.3            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiCollab Client Virtual             | 7.3            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   |     |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual      | 9.4            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   |     |
| MiVoice Business Express            | 7.3            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   |     |
| MiContact Center Office             | 6.1            |                                    |     |      |     | Y   | Y   |
| MiContact Center Business           | 8.1 SPx        |                                    |     | Y    | Y   | Y   |     |
| Oria Virtual                        | 5.3 SPx        | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   |     |
| MiCloud Management Gateway          | 5.0            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| LBG                                 | 3.5, 3.4, 3.3  |                                    |     |      |     |     |     |
| MiVoice Enterprise Manager          | 9.0            |                                    |     |      |     |     |     |
| <b>PREVIOUS RELEASES</b>            |                |                                    |     |      |     |     |     |
| MiVoice Business Virtual            | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0 | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiVoice Express                     | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0 | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiCollab with Voice                 | 6.x            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiCollab Virtual                    | 7.2+, 7.1      | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiCollab Virtual                    | 7.1, 6.0       | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vMAS                                | 5.0            | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |

**Table 27: VMware software versions by Mitel virtual appliance versions**

|                                |                             | VSPHERE WEB<br>CLIENT <sup>1</sup> |     | ESXI |     |     |     |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|------|-----|-----|-----|
|                                |                             | 6.0                                | 5.5 | 6.0  | 5.5 | 5.1 | 5.0 |
| MiCollab Client Virtual        | 7.2 SP1, 7.2, 7.1, 7.0, 6.0 | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual | 9.x, 8.1, 7.x               | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vUC Advanced                   | 6.x, 5.x                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 8.2+, 8.1                   | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 7.0                         |                                    | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 6.0, 5.0 SP2                |                                    |     |      |     | Y   | Y   |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 5.0                         |                                    |     |      |     |     | Y   |
| MiContact Center Business      | 8.1, 8.0, 7.x               |                                    |     | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| Oria Virtual                   | 5.1, 5.0+                   | Y                                  | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| Oria Virtual                   | 4.0                         |                                    | Y   | Y    | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vCSM                           | 6.0                         |                                    |     |      |     |     | Y   |
| vUIC                           | 3.0                         |                                    | Y   |      |     | Y   | Y   |

**Notes:**

1. The vSphere Client can be used to manage VMs with VMware virtual hardware versions up to version 9, but you will not be able to create new VMs. If you need to both create or manage VMs, you must stay at virtual hardware version 7 or 8, and you must manage your VMs with the vSphere Client.



**Table 28: vCenter and vSphere compatibility with Mitel virtual appliances**

|                                |                        | VSPHERE WEB<br>CLIENT <sup>1</sup> |     | VCENTER SERVER AND VSPHERE<br>CLIENT <sup>1</sup> |     |     |     |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|
|                                |                        | 6.0                                | 5.5 | 6.0                                               | 5.5 | 5.1 | 5.0 |
| <b>CURRENT RELEASES</b>        |                        |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| MiVoice Business Virtual       | 8.0                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |
| MiCollab Virtual               | 7.3                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |
| NuPoint UM Virtual             | 8.3                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     | Y   |
| MiCollab Client                | 7.3                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     | Y   |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual | 9.4                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |
| MiContact Center Office        | 6.1                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| Oria Virtual                   | 5.3 SPx                | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |
| MiCloud Management Gateway     | 5.0                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |
| MiContact Center Business      | 8.1 SPx                |                                    |     | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |
| MiVoice Business Express       | 7.3                    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |
| LBG                            | 3.3                    |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| MiVoice Enterprise Manager     | 9.0                    |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| <b>PREVIOUS RELEASES</b>       |                        |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| MiVoice Business Virtual       | 7.2 SP1, 7.2, 7.1, 7.0 | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiVoice Business Express       | 7.2 SP1, 7.2, 7.1, 7.0 | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| MiCollab with Voice            | 6.0, 5.0               |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| MiCollab Virtual               | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0, 6.0    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vMAS                           | 5.0                    |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| NuPoint UM Virtual             | 8.2+, 8.1              | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     | Y   |
| NuPoint UM Virtual             | 8.0, 7.0               | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 6.0                    |                                    |     | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 5.0 SP2                |                                    |     |                                                   |     | Y   | Y   |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 5.0                    |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| MiCollab Client                | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0, 6.0    | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| UC Advanced                    | 5.x                    |                                    |     |                                                   |     |     |     |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual | 9.x, 8.x, 7.x          | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   | Y   | Y   |
| Oria Virtual                   | 5.1, 5.2               | Y                                  | Y   | Y                                                 | Y   |     |     |

**Table 28: vCenter and vSphere compatibility with Mitel virtual appliances**

|                           |              | VSPHERE WEB CLIENT <sup>1</sup> |     | VCENTER SERVER AND VSPHERE CLIENT <sup>1</sup> |     |     |     |
|---------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|
|                           |              | 6.0                             | 5.5 | 6.0                                            | 5.5 | 5.1 | 5.0 |
| Oria Virtual              | 5.0 SP1, 5.0 | Y                               | Y   | Y                                              | Y   | Y   |     |
| MiContact Center Business | 8.1, 8.0     |                                 |     | Y                                              | Y   | Y   |     |
| vCSM                      | 6.0          |                                 |     |                                                |     |     | Y   |
| vUIC                      | 3.0          | Y                               | Y   | Y                                              | Y   | Y   | Y   |

**Note:** The vSphere Client can be used to manage VMs with VMware virtual hardware versions up to version 9, but you will not be able to create new VMs. If you need to both create or manage VMs, you must stay at virtual hardware version 7 or 8, and you must manage your VMs with the vSphere Client.

## VMware Tools

VMware Tools is a software deliverable provided by VMware. It is installed and run inside the Guest O/S, to integrate the virtual and guest environments, and to improve VM performance.

VMware Tools packages are designed to integrate with particular, well known commercial operating systems like Red Hat Linux, Windows, and so on. In the case of Mitel Standard Linux (MSL), which is not considered well known by VMware, VMware Tools distributions are managed within the Mitel Virtualization Framework (MVF). Mitel virtual applications based on MSL include the MVF Blade as part of their OVA packaging, with the MVF containing the latest VMware Tools at time of product release. **Do not attempt to install or upgrade the VMware Tools using VMware vSphere functions.**



**CAUTION: DO NOT PERFORM A MANUAL INSTALL OF VMWARE TOOLS IN MSL. VMWARE TOOLS UPGRADES MUST BE DONE BY UPGRADING THE MVF BLADE. MICONTACT CENTER OFFICE IS THE ONE EXCEPTION. REFER TO THE MICONTACT CENTER OFFICE DOCUMENTATION FOR DETAILS.**

In the case of Mitel applications containing MVF in their OVA packaging, in the vSphere Client **Summary Tab**, the VMware Tools field displays “(3rd-party/Independent)”. This means that VMware cannot manage or upgrade the VMware Tools in that Guest O/S. The status will be displayed as **Unmanaged** in the vSphere 4.1 Client.

While it is desirable to always upgrade VMware Tools to the latest available for the version of vSphere being used, there are constraints on how this can be performed.

- For Mitel virtual appliances containing MSL 10.0 and above combined with MVF 2.0 and above, an MVF Blade upgrade can be applied in order to upgrade VMware Tools. From the MSL blades panel, it may be possible to upgrade MVF (and VMware tools) if a newer MVF version is shown as an upgrade option through the Mitel AMC. OVA upgrade to a newer version of the appliance containing the desired VMware Tools level is also applicable. See [“OVA upgrade advantages”](#) on page 139.
- For Mitel virtual appliances that contain either MSL 9.x series or MVF 1.x series, MVF Blade upgrade is not applicable. OVA upgrade to a newer version of the appliance, containing

the desired VMware Tools, is the only method available. See “OVA upgrade advantages” on page 139.

- Those Mitel Applications that are not packaged as an OVA (Live Business Gateway, for example), but are installed into a pre-existing VMware Virtual Machine and Guest O/S, can have their VMware Tools software installed and upgraded in the Guest O/S using the normal VMware-supplied methods. This also applies to OVA-packaged virtual appliances based on Windows OS (MiContact Center Office Virtual, for example). Refer to the VMware documentation for instructions.

Table 29 summarizes VMware Tools upgrade methods applicable to each Mitel virtual appliance or application.

**Table 29: VMware Tools packaging and upgrade by Mitel virtual appliance**

|                                |                     | VMWARE TOOLS INCLUDED | VMWARE TOOLS UPGRADE                      |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>CURRENT RELEASES</b>        |                     |                       |                                           |
| MiVoice Business Virtual       | 8.0                 | Y                     | OVA upgrade                               |
| MiCollab Virtual               | 7.3                 | Y                     | OVA to 6.0 and above                      |
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual | 9.4                 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 8.1 and above |
| NuPoint UM Virtual             | 8.3                 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 7.0 and above |
| MiCollab Client Virtual        | 7.3                 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 6.0 and above |
| MiVoice Business Express       | 7.3                 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 6.0 and above |
| Open Integration Gateway       | 4.0                 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA                  |
| MiContact Center Business      | 8.1 SPx             | Y                     | Use VMware methods                        |
| MiContact Center Office        | 6.1 SP1             | Y                     |                                           |
| Oria Virtual                   | 5.x                 | Y                     |                                           |
| MiCloud Management Gateway     | 5.0                 | Y                     | Use VMware methods                        |
| LBG                            | 3.5                 | N                     | Use VMware methods                        |
| MiVoice Enterprise Manager     | 7.0                 | N                     | Use VMware methods                        |
| <b>PREVIOUS RELEASES</b>       |                     |                       |                                           |
| MiVoice Business Virtual       | 7.x                 | Y                     | OVA upgrade                               |
| vMCD                           | 6.0 SP2             | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 6.0 SP2+      |
| vMCD                           | 6.0 SP1, 6.0, 5.0   |                       | OVA to 6.0 SP2+                           |
| MiCollab Virtual               | 7.2+, 7.1, 7.0, 6.0 | Y                     | OVA to 6.0 or 7.0                         |
| vMAS                           | 5.x                 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 5.0 SP1+ M    |

**Table 29: VMware Tools packaging and upgrade by Mitel virtual appliance**

|                                |                     | VMWARE TOOLS INCLUDED | VMWARE TOOLS UPGRADE                      |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| MiVoice Border Gateway Virtual | 9.x, 8.1            | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 8.1 and above |
| vMBG                           | 8.0 SP1, 8.0        | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 8.0 SP1+      |
| vMBG                           | 7.x                 | Y                     | OVA to 8.0+                               |
| NuPoint UM Virtual             | 8.2+, 8.1, 8.0, 7.0 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 7.0 and above |
| vNuPoint UM                    | 6.0 SP1, 6.0        | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA to 6.0 SP1+      |
| MiCollab Client Virtual        | 7.x, 6.0 SP1        | Y                     | MVF blade or OVA upgrade                  |
| vUC Advanced                   | 6.0, 5.1, 5.0, 4.0  | Y                     | OVA to 6.0+                               |
| MiVoice Business Express       | 7.x                 | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA upgrade          |
| MiCollab with Voice / vUCC     | 6.0, 5.x            |                       | MVF blade upgrade or OVA upgrade          |
| MiContact Center               | 8.1, 8.0, 7.x       | Y                     | Use VMware methods                        |
| MiContact Center Office        | 6.0 SP1, 6.0        | Y                     | Use VMware methods                        |
| Open Integration Gateway       | 3.1, 3.0            | Y                     | MVF blade upgrade or OVA                  |
| LBG                            | 3.4, 3.3            | N                     | Use VMware methods                        |

## Supporting additional VMware features

Table 30 shows the VMware features not already discussed elsewhere in this guide, and discusses their use with Mitel virtual solutions.

**Table 30: Additional VMware features**

| FUNCTION                        | SUPPORTED?                     | NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Update Manager and O/S Patching | Not for MSL virtual appliances | VMware does not have the necessary knowledge of MSL or its updates and patches.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Consolidated Backup             | No                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| vStorage APIs (VADP)            | Yes                            | <p>Except for MiContact Center Office Virtual</p> <p>The “vStorage APIs for Data Protection” feature enables backup software to protect system, application, and user data in their virtual appliances in a simple and scalable way. These APIs enable backup software to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Perform full, differential, and incremental image backup and restore of virtual appliances.</li> <li>• Perform file-level backup of virtual appliances using supported Windows and Linux operating systems.</li> </ul> |

**Table 30: Additional VMware features**

| <b>FUNCTION</b>           | <b>SUPPORTED?</b> | <b>NOTES</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| vSphere Storage Appliance | Yes               | Virtual storage running on VMware-enabled servers. Provides storage virtualization, with the ability to remove the danger of a single point of failure. Used as a cost-effective solution for smaller deployments that do not have SAN, |
| Data Recovery             | Yes               | Except for MiContact Center Office Virtual                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Hot Add                   | No                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| VMsafe                    | No                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| vCenter Converter         | No                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |



# Chapter 8

## MIGRATING TO THE VIRTUAL APPLIANCE





## Migrating from Mitel physical solution to a virtual deployment

You can migrate your solution from a Mitel hardware appliance or a stand-alone industry standard server (ISS) to the corresponding virtual appliance in a VMware or Hyper-V infrastructure to save cost and server space, and to make administration easier for IT staff.

See the Engineering Guidelines (Table 9 on page 33), the Installation and Maintenance Guides, (Table 32 on page 159) and the Release Notes for each product for more details.

### Migrating to Hyper-V

To migrate Mitel appliances and applications to a Hyper-V environment, refer to the product specific documentation for performing the installation on Hyper-V.

Note that a virtualization-specific license is required before installing any Mitel appliances and applications in a Hyper-V environment.

### Migrating to VMware

MCD/MiVoice Business variants eligible for migrations to the virtual versions include:

- 3300 ICP running MCD 4.1 on MXe Server, MiVoice Business on ISS, and a single MiVoice Business instance on MiVoice Business Multi-instance.
- 3300 ICP with PSTN (analog or digital) gateway functions cannot be migrated to a MiVoice Business Virtual, as the PSTN connections require physical interfaces and connections.



**Note:** Before changing from a physical to a virtual environment, you must add the virtual application part number to the application record (ARID). All migrations require a virtualization-specific license.

**Table 31: Migration from Mitel hardware to Mitel virtual applications**

| FROM/TO                                     | CONDITIONS AND RESTRICTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MiVoice Business<br>Standalone Base Package | Systems running MiVoice Business Standalone Base Package must be upgraded to MiVoice Business Enterprise before converting to MiVoice Business Virtual, See Product Bulletin PA20110092 for upgrade details. |

**Table 31: Migration from Mitel hardware to Mitel virtual applications (continued)**

| FROM/TO                                                                                                     | CONDITIONS AND RESTRICTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MCD 5.0 to<br>vMCD 6.0 or MiVoice<br>Business 7.x, 8.x                                                      | <p>There are two options for this upgrade:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keep the 3300 ICP as a gateway and/or resilient fail-over point: Purchase a new MiVoice Business Virtual base software package and migrate the incremental (non-base) user licenses and system options to the new MiVoice Business Virtual.</li> <li>Remove the 3300 ICP from the network: Purchase the 3300-to-MiVoice Business Virtual Conversion license to convert (re-license) the application record in the AMC for the existing system into a MiVoice Business Virtual license. All licenses and system options are retained on the new MiVoice Business Virtual, including those that were a part of the original MiVoice Business software Base Package.</li> </ul> <p>Migrate as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Migrate user licenses and system options from the existing system to the new MiVoice Business 5.0+ system. Any licenses that were part of the original base 3300 ICP Application Record cannot be migrated to the new Application Record.</li> <li>Remove all analog components, change the IP address, and restore the MCD 5.0+ backup to the MiVoice Business instance. See <a href="#">“MiVoice Business on Mitel 3300 ICP to MiVoice Business Virtual”</a> on page 153 for details.</li> </ol> |
| MiVoice Business Embedded<br>Voice Mail                                                                     | <p>MiVoice Business Virtual supports embedded voice mail up to 150 mail boxes. Existing deployments with MiVoice Business systems having more than 150 mail boxes provisioned should be migrated to MiCollab Virtual or NuPoint Virtual.</p> <p>If an existing MiVoice Business system with more than 150 mail boxes is converted to a MiVoice Business Virtual (using PN 54005366), the additional mailboxes will continue to be available (they will not be turned off). However, this is an unsupported state and service degradation is possible. No further mail boxes can be added after the migration.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| MiVoice Business on 3300<br>ICP or MiVoice Business ISS<br>to<br>vUC Business Bundle                        | Not supported                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| UC Advanced 5.0 or 6.0<br>to vUC Advanced 5.0 or 6.x<br><br>UC Advanced 6.0<br>to MiCollab Client 6.0+, 7.x | <p>You must buy a license for the migration to MiCollab Client. Refer to the <i>MiCollab Client Engineering Guidelines</i> for part numbers.</p> <p>The UCA/MiCollab Client Services database must be at version 5.0 or higher.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| NuPoint UM 6.0 to<br>NuPoint UM Virtual 6.0, 7.0,<br>8.x                                                    | Create a backup, and restore it on NuPoint UM Virtual.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| MAS 5.0 to<br>MiCollab Virtual 6.0 or 7.x                                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Back up the MAS database.</li> <li>Restore to MiCollab Virtual 6.0 or 7.x</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| MBG 6.1 to vMBG 6.1<br>MBG 7.0 to<br>vMBG 7.0 or vMBG 8.x, 9.x                                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You must buy a license for the migration to vMBG. Refer to the <i>MiVoice Border Gateway Engineering Guidelines</i> for part numbers.</li> <li>Create an database backup on the source MBG, and restore the database to the destination vMBG after deployment.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

**Note:** You cannot restore a MiCollab Virtual OVA file from a newer vSphere platform to a platform with an older version of vSphere. For example, you cannot restore a MiCollab Virtual OVA file that was backed up on a vSphere 6.0 platform to a vSphere 5.5 platform.

For details about the database and licensing effects of the migration to MiVoice Business Virtual, also refer to KB article 13-5191-00303.

Although the migrations from physical to virtual are supported as shown in [Table 31](#), in some cases, there are specific steps and preparations that make the migration go more smoothly. See the following sections:

- “MiVoice Business on Mitel 3300 ICP to MiVoice Business Virtual” on page 153
- “UC Advanced to vUCA/MiCollab Client Virtual” on page 154

### MiVoice Business on Mitel 3300 ICP to MiVoice Business Virtual

Preparing your database for transfer to the MiVoice Business Virtual can take from 8 to 16 hours, so it is strongly recommended that you do all the preparation on an spare 3300 ICP that is not part of your network.

**To migrate an MiVoice Business to a MiVoice Business Virtual if the MiVoice Business Virtual to migrate is in a cluster:**

1. Remove the MiVoice Business from the cluster. Remove all programming that defines the controller as being in the cluster.
2. Prepare the spare controller as described in “[To migrate MiVoice Business to a new MiVoice Business Virtual:](#)” on page 153.
3. Create a backup of the spare controller.
4. Prepare the MiVoice Business Virtual as described in “[To migrate MiVoice Business to a new MiVoice Business Virtual:](#)” on page 153.
5. Restore the backup from the spare to the new MiVoice Business Virtual.
6. Add the new MiVoice Business Virtual to the cluster.

If you are upgrading older versions; like the 3300 ICP LX controller, for example; contact Mitel Professional Services for assistance.

**To migrate MiVoice Business to a new MiVoice Business Virtual:**

1. Provision the spare 3300 ICP with the same licenses as are on the customer 3300 ICP.
2. On the customer 3300 ICP controller, create a backup of the database.
3. On the spare 3300 ICP controller:
  - a. Restore the customer database to the spare controller.
  - b. Remove all programming for the physical trunks. Make sure there are no remnants of the trunk programming left in the database.
  - c. Upgrade the database to at least MCD Release 4.0. If you are upgrading to 4.1 or 4.2, you must upgrade to version 4.0 first.
  - d. For more information about version-to-version migrations, see [Table 31, “Migration from Mitel hardware to Mitel virtual applications,”](#) on page 151.
  - e. The allowed IP addresses for MiVoice Business Virtual are different than those on the MiVoice Business, so you must change the IP address on the controller to the IP address that you will be using on the MiVoice Business Virtual.

Changing the system IP address may also affect database entries related to routing and communicating with other MiVoice Business instances, in this and other networked MiVoice Business instances. Updates may be required here as well, if the IP address of the system changes.



**Note:** MCD Release 6.0+ and MiVoice Business: Each MCD/MiVoice Business requires two IP addresses, one for MSL and one for MiVoice Business.  
MCD Release 5.x and previous: Each vMCD requires five IP addresses, one for MSL and 4 contiguous IP addresses for the MCD space.

**CAUTION:** Ensure that no IP addresses are duplicated in the network.

- f. Clean up the database, including the telephone directory.
4. Create a backup of the database on the spare controller.
5. Prepare the MiVoice Business Virtual:
  - a. Ensure the IP address is set. See [Step e.](#) above.
  - b. Ensure that the MiVoice Business Virtual has all the required licenses, both to cover the full number of user licenses needed for the different types of licenses, and to cover the upgraded version of MiVoice Business Virtual.
6. Restore the backup you created in [Step 4.](#) onto the MiVoice Business Virtual.
7. Perform additional upgrades, as required, on the MiVoice Business Virtual.
8. Add the MiVoice Business Virtual to the network.

## UC Advanced to vUCA/MiCollab Client Virtual

Before doing the conversion from UC Advanced to the virtual version, you must buy a license for the migration. Refer to the *UC Advanced Engineering Guidelines* or *MiCollab Client Engineering Guidelines* for part numbers.



**Note:** MiCollab Client is supported in MiVoice Business Express only in integrated mode.

Refer to the *MiCollab Installation and Maintenance Guide* for more conditions and instructions, and for adding MiCollab Client Virtual into MiCollab Virtual.

### To convert from UC Advanced to vUCA/MiCollab Client Virtual:

1. Perform a Mitel Standard Linux (MSL) backup on the UC Advanced server.
2. Create an ISO image, and add the UC Advanced backup file into it.
3. Copy the ISO file to a VMware data store.
4. Import the MiCollab Client OVA (.ova file).
5. MSL will prompt you by asking if you want to restore from backup. Enter **Yes**.
6. Mount the ISO from the data store and follow the MSL restore instructions.

# Chapter 9

## MAINTENANCE AND TROUBLESHOOTING



## Maintenance

After your system is up and running, there are regular tasks to perform to keep the system running well:

- “Backups” on page 157
- “Restores” on page 160
- “Software upgrades” on page 138
- “Monitoring resource usage and performance” on page 161

## Backups

Virtual machine backups can be done for the entire VM, as a whole, or at the product level, and there are different ways to do the various types of backup. In general, you should start with the Release Notes for each product for detailed information.

The following sections give background information on each backup and restore approach. See the product-specific backup and restore methods, as found in the corresponding Mitel product guides listed in Table 32.

### Backup Methods in Hyper-V

To perform backups of Mitel virtual applications running on Hyper-V virtual machines, follow the backup procedures in the Mitel product-specific documentation.

### Backup methods in VMware

The sections that follow describe several ways of backing up the virtual appliance or the whole VM, and the best ways to perform backups, depending on circumstances.

#### *Backups using virtual machine snapshots and replication*

Snapshots are typically used to create a restoration point before installing a different version of an application, or before performing potentially destabilizing or error-prone re-configuration of the applications. After the new application is up and running, or re-configuration verified, the restoration point must be removed to avoid any performance degradation. Snapshots should not be used as a method of backing up the Mitel virtual appliance. Snapshots must be deleted after restore is complete.

To perform a complete backup of your system, you can use VMware management functions to back up the full virtual appliance VM, which includes all of the virtual applications running on it. When creating backups of the whole VM, you must ensure that you have plenty of storage space because the backups can be very large for a large system.

In the general case, you can take a snapshots of the whole VM while it is powered on (running), suspended, or shut down.



**Note:** Live snapshots are not supported for Mitel virtual appliances. Snapshots of a suspended Virtual Machine are also not supported. Mitel virtual appliances must be powered down before a snapshot is saved.

Snapshots preserve the state of a VM such that it can be returned to the same state repeatedly. A snapshot captures the entire state of a virtual machine at a given moment in time. This includes:

- Memory state: the contents of the virtual machine memory
- Settings state: the virtual machine settings
- Disk state: the state of all virtual disks on the virtual machine
- Power state: whether the virtual machine is running, suspended, or shut down

When reverting to a snapshot, these items are returned to their state at the time the snapshot was taken. With snapshots, a user can create backup and restore positions in a linear process. Snapshots are typically used as restoration points during a linear or iterative process, such as installing update packages, or during a branching process, such as installing different versions of an application.

Because Mitel virtual appliances are communicating with other devices on the network and because the risk of a database corruption increases when live snapshots are taken, it is strongly recommended that the Virtual Machine hosting a Mitel virtual appliances be powered down prior to taking a snapshot.



**Note:** Keeping a snapshot consumes run-time resources, because the virtual disk subsystem must keep track of changed blocks from the snapshot. This presents a load on the system that can cause performance degradation; snapshots should be kept only temporarily, and then deleted when they are no longer needed.

### *VMware OVF Export*

A VMware OVF export creates an image of the VM which can then be re-deployed in the same way the Mitel virtual appliance OVA was deployed originally.

An OVF Export operation is supported only when the virtual appliance is shut down.

### *Mitel virtual application or MSL backup and restore*

Mitel provides a backup strategy and capability with each individual Mitel application. Mitel backups are done at the product level, so they use much less of the system's resources, as compared to VM snapshots or Data Recovery methods. Mitel application-specific backups are an important part of upgrade strategy.



**Note:** Do not restore MSL to your virtual machine. This restore is not supported.

Use of Mitel application-specific backups, on an ongoing basis, is recommended practice. This may be done in combination with other methods discussed previously.

For information about Mitel product-specific backup and restore capabilities, see the documentation for each product. Backup and restore procedures are described in the guides listed in Table 32. These guides are available on Mitel Online.



**Table 32: Mitel documentation for backup and restore**

| MITEL PRODUCT             | GUIDE CONTAINING BACKUP AND RESTORE INSTRUCTIONS                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MiVoice Business Virtual  | <i>Installation and Administration Guide for MiVoice Business Virtual</i>                                                              |
| MiCollab Virtual          | <i>MiCollab Installation and Maintenance Guide</i>                                                                                     |
| MiCollab Client           | Use the MSL backup procedure to back up the MiCollab Client data:<br><i>Mitel Standard Linux installation and Administration Guide</i> |
| NuPoint Unified Messaging | <i>NuPoint Unified Messaging and MAS UM General Information Guide</i><br>Also see the System Administration Online Help.               |
| MiVoice Business Express  | <i>MiVoice Business Express Deployment Guide</i>                                                                                       |

## VMware Data Protection

VMware Data Protection (VDP) protects against data loss in your virtual environment by enabling fast backups to disk, and fast and complete recovery of data. It is built on the vStorage APIs for Data Protection (VADP), and is fully integrated with vCenter Server for centralized scheduling of backups. vSphere Data Protection is itself a virtual machine that runs on VMware ESX and ESXi hosts. vSphere Data Protection requires vCenter Server.

vSphere Data Protection also provides a centralized management interface to enable backup and recovery of your VMs directly through VMware vCenter Server, and automatically monitors VMs that are moved by HA, vMotion, and DRS, so that scheduled backups can continue uninterrupted.

During a backup, Data Recovery creates a quiesced snapshot of the virtual machine. Deduplication is automatically performed with every backup operation.

Data Recovery can concurrently back up a maximum of eight virtual machines. To start multiple backups, CPU utilization must be less than 90 percent. Due to memory constraints, Data Recover does not support using more than two backup destinations simultaneously. If more than two backup destinations must be used, configure them to be used at different times.

You can create backup jobs that include which virtual machines to backup, where to store the backups, and for how long. For details on installing and running Data Recovery, refer to the VMware documentation.



**Note:** To avoid adverse effects on NuPoint Virtual voice quality, use vSphere Data Protection backups only at times when the call rate is less than 500 Calls Per Hour (CPH).

## vStorage APIs for Data Protection (VADP)

The VADP allows third-party backup software providers to access VMFS volumes directly, off-loading the work from the main processors. A VADP-based backup can be expected to have no adverse effects on voice quality.



**Note:** Third party backup applications have not been specifically qualified by Mitel, and are not fully supported.

### Backup routine recommendations

You should rely primarily on the Mitel product-specific backup recommendations; see [Table 32](#) for the guides containing this information for the various products.

**Table 33: Recommended backup methods**

| BACKUP/RESTORE REQUIREMENT                                              | RECOMMENDED METHOD                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| After initial configuration or provisioning                             | Application or MSL backup*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Day-to-day backup for application data recovery                         | Use one or more of these methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Scheduled Application backup or MSL backup.*</li><li>• Scheduled vSphere Data Protection</li><li>• Third-party backup software using VADP (if available)</li><li>• Export/Import OVA</li></ul> |
| Application Blade software upgrade                                      | Application or MSL backup.*<br>Snapshot (remove after upgrade validated).                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Deploying a new version of a Mitel virtual appliance with a new release | Application or MSL backup.*<br>Import after OVA deployment of upgrade (major release).                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Migration from physical application to virtual appliance                | Application or MSL backup.*<br>Import after OVA deployment.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

#### Notes:

1. See [Table 32](#) for the product-specific guides.
2. MiVoice Business Virtual requires both an MiVoice Business backup and an MSL backup.
3. vUIC requires only an application backup.

### Restores

If you perform backups using the product-specific backup procedures, you should also use the product-specific restore routines described in the product documentation. See [Table 32](#) for the product-specific guides.



**Note:** Do not restore MSL to your virtual machine. This is not supported.

### MiCollab Virtual system recovery

You can recover a MiCollab Virtual system database on the same virtual machine by deploying the latest MiCollab Virtual OVF file, restoring your MiCollab Virtual database backup, and then installing the latest MiCollab application software.

For detailed instructions, refer to the *MiCollab Installation and Maintenance Guide*.

## Monitoring resource usage and performance

To keep your Mitel virtual applications running at peak performance, it is recommended that you track ongoing CPU and memory utilization, network I/O performance, and storage I/O performance. This can be done manually, by regularly observing performance statistics for each host server in the solution, and for critical VMs. These statistics are available through vSphere Client/vCenter Performance tabs. Ensure that vCPU, memory, network and disk performance is within the limits stated for the specific applications, and the general guidelines given elsewhere in this document.

Tracking performance and resource use in an automatic way is especially useful when monitoring critical resources. VMware vCenter Operations integrates directly with third-party monitoring tools for a complete view of your infrastructure. You can set the upper and lower bounds of the “normal” range, and configure alerts that appear when performance criteria stray outside of the normal range. For more information, see the VMware White Paper, [Sophisticated Dynamic Thresholds with VMware vCenter Operations](#).



**Note:** NuPoint has specific limits for minimum I/O storage that may require monitoring. See the *Mitel NuPoint Unified Messaging Engineering Guidelines*.

# Troubleshooting

Each Mitel virtual appliance is installed with its own built-in diagnostics for use in troubleshooting problems local to the specific Mitel virtual application.

Refer to the following product guides for troubleshooting help.

**Table 34: Troubleshooting guides for Mitel products**

| PRODUCT                                       | GUIDE CONTAINING TROUBLESHOOTING INFORMATION                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3300 IP Communications Platform               | <i>Mitel 3300 IP Communications Platform Troubleshooting Guide</i>                                                                                                                                                |
| MiVoice Business                              | <i>MiVoice Business Technician's Handbook</i>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| MiVoice Business Virtual                      | <i>MiVoice Business Voice Quality Troubleshooting Guide</i><br><i>Installation Guide for MiVoice Business Virtual</i><br><i>Engineering Guidelines for Industry Standard Servers and MiVoice Business Virtual</i> |
| MiCollab                                      | <i>MiCollab Installation and Maintenance Guide</i>                                                                                                                                                                |
| NuPoint UM                                    | <i>NuPoint Unified Messaging Technician's Handbook</i>                                                                                                                                                            |
| MiCollab Client                               | <i>MiCollab Client Engineering Guidelines</i>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| MiVoice Border Gateway<br>MBG and MBG Virtual | <i>MiVoice Border Gateway (MBG) Installation and Maintenance Guide</i>                                                                                                                                            |
| MiVoice Business Express                      | <i>MiVoice Business Express Deployment Guide</i>                                                                                                                                                                  |

## Troubleshooting virtual appliances in Hyper-V environment

For Hyper-V specific troubleshooting information, refer to the Hyper-V documentation, including <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc742454.aspx>.

## Troubleshooting virtual appliances in VMware environment

For Enterprise-level troubleshooting in the VMware environment, you must install VMware vCenter Virtualization Management. For more information about VMware vCenter Virtualization Management, see <http://www.vmware.com/products/vcenter-server/overview.html>.

### Mitel Virtualization Diagnostic Tool (VDT)

Troubleshooting is especially difficult in the service provider environment in which the customer is renting computing capacity from the service provider. In this deployment model, the Mitel customer has no access to the service provider's virtual infrastructure. Isolation of issues within the virtual infrastructure from problems within the Mitel virtual solution is almost impossible without some level of cooperation from the service provider.

For the full VDT reference, see "Virtualization Diagnostic Tool (VDT)" on page 166. This reference is also maintained in the Mitel Standard Linux (MSL) on-line help.

## Collecting VMware logs

There may be times when the logs from a Mitel Virtual Machine do not have enough information to diagnose a problem. In some of these cases it may be necessary to get the logs from vCenter or the hypervisor. This is done using the vSphere client in either the Windows or the Web client variant. Although typically more information is better than less, as a minimum, Mitel Product Support will need at least the **vmware\*.log** for your VM and the **hostd.log** for the host the VM was running on.

Although you can collect logs using either the vSphere Windows client or the new Web client, VMware plans to drop support for the Windows client in the future, so it may be more appropriate to use the Web client.

VMware has documented the process for collecting diagnostics using the Web client here:

[http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\\_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=2032892](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=2032892).

This is the definitive reference for this process but for your convenience, the process is presented below.

### To collect ESX/ESXi and vCenter Server diagnostic data using the Web client:

1. Start the vSphere Web Client and log in to the vCenter Server system.
2. Under Inventory Lists, select **vCenter Servers**.
3. Click the vCenter Server that contains the ESX/ESXi hosts from which you want to export logs.
4. Click the **Monitor** tab and click **System Logs**.
5. Click **Export System Logs**.
6. Select the ESX/ESXi hosts from which you want to export logs.
7. Optional: Select the **Include vCenter Server and vSphere Web Client logs** option.
8. Click **Next**.
9. Select the system logs that are to be exported.

Make sure that the **vmware\*.log** for your VM is acquired by selecting the check box **VirtualMachines/logs** and the **host.d log** is acquired by selecting **Logs/System**. If you are not concerned about the size of the log archive it would be best to select more options.

10. Select **Gather performance data** to include performance data information in the log files.



**Note:** You can update the duration and interval time for the data collection.

11. Click **Next**.
12. Click **Generate Log Bundle**. The **Download Log Bundles** dialog appears when the Generating Diagnostic Bundle task completes.
13. Click **Download Log Bundle** to save it to your local computer.



**Note:** The host or vCenter Server generates ZIP bundles containing the log files. The **Recent Tasks** panel shows the **Generate diagnostic bundles** task in progress.

14. After the download is complete, click **Finish** or generate another log bundle.



**Note:** You can use the events log to troubleshoot issues, particularly when trying to determine a timestamp.

**To export the events log:**

1. Click **File > Export > Export Events**.
2. Browse to a location to save the log bundle.
3. Choose a time frame to export and click **OK**.
4. Choose the format in which to export and click **Save**.

VMware has documented the process for collecting diagnostics using the Windows client here:

[http://www.google.com/url?q=http%3A%2F%2Fkb.vmware.com%2Fselfservice%2Fsearch.do%3Fcmd%3DdisplayKC%26docType%3Dkc%26docTypeID%3DDT\\_KB\\_1\\_1%26externalId%3D653&sa=D&sntz=1&usg=AFQjCNE9KLhCRK-Sz9cyzRq-F\\_B9Zv3Ytw](http://www.google.com/url?q=http%3A%2F%2Fkb.vmware.com%2Fselfservice%2Fsearch.do%3Fcmd%3DdisplayKC%26docType%3Dkc%26docTypeID%3DDT_KB_1_1%26externalId%3D653&sa=D&sntz=1&usg=AFQjCNE9KLhCRK-Sz9cyzRq-F_B9Zv3Ytw)

This is the definitive reference for this process but as a convenience the process is presented below.

**To collect ESX/ESXi and vCenter Server diagnostic data using the Windows client:**

1. Open the vSphere Client and connect to vCenter Server or directly to an ESXi 5.x host.
2. Log in using an account with administrative privileges or with the Global.Diagnostics permission.
3. Select an ESXi host, cluster, or data center in the inventory.
4. Click **File > Export > Export System Logs**.
5. If a group of ESXi hosts are available in the selected context, select the host or group of hosts from the Source list.
6. Click **Next**.
7. In the **System Logs** pane, select the components for which the diagnostic information must be obtained. To collect diagnostic information for all the components, click **Select All**.

Make sure the vmware\*.log for your VM is acquired by selecting the check box **VirtualMachines/logs** and the host.d log is acquired by selecting **Logs/System**. If you are not concerned about the size of the log archive, it would be best to select more options.

8. If required, select the **Gather performance data** option and specify a duration and interval.
9. Click **Next**.
10. In the **Download Location** pane, click **Browse** and select a location on the client's disk where you want to save the support bundle.

11. Click **Next**.

12. In the **Ready to Complete** pane, review the summary and click **Finish**.

The **Downloading System Logs Bundles** dialog box appears and provides progress status for the creation and downloading of the support bundle from each source. A **Generate system logs bundles** task is created.

## Virtualization Diagnostic Tool (VDT)

To simplify the gathering of diagnostic information, the Virtualization Diagnostic Tool provides the ability to extract some statistical information from the service provider virtual infrastructure automatically, and make this infrastructure data available.

VDT is delivered to all Mitel virtual appliances through the MVF blade with the exception of the Windows-based MiContact Center Office, and MiVoice Business Virtual. As VDT collects virtual infrastructure data on a periodic basis, it may impose additional CPU and network loading on the ESXi host, virtual network and vCenter.

To use the VDT, you need:

- Operating System: MSL 10.0 or higher
- VMware environment: vSphere 4.1 or higher
- Mitel Virtual Framework: MVF 2.0 or higher

By default, Mitel virtual appliances are delivered with the Virtualization Diagnostic Tool activated.

### Using the VDT

**To use the VDT web page:**

1. Log in to the MSL Server Manager on a Mitel virtual application that supports VDT.



**Note:** Full VDT functionality requires Administrator level access to either the ESXi host or the vCenter that manages that host.

2. Navigate to **Administration > Virtualization** (left-side menu). The **Mitel Virtualization** page is displayed. From this page, you can view the **Diagnostic Overview**, which displays status for hypervisor support, OVA dimensioning, AMC connectivity and Last Nightly Analysis.
3. In the **Credentials and Diagnostics** section of the page, enter the vCenter or ESXi credentials to gain access to all the information available. Without these credentials, a subset of the information is still available. See [Table 35](#) for details.
4. Click **Run diagnostics** to initiate the manual analysis of seven days of Mitel virtual appliance statistics.



**Note:** The VDT is packaged with the Mitel Virtualization Framework, and is supported on, and run from, Mitel Standard Linux (MSL).

This introductory release of the VDT is not supported on Microsoft Windows, but is available as a separate deliverable, if required.

### Required credentials

[Table 35](#) shows the VDT features, and the credential level required for each one.



Table 35: Feature by required credential level

| FEATURE                                                                | REQUIRED CREDENTIALS                   |                                |                                                         |                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                        | NO CREDENTIALS REQUIRED                | ESXI CREDENTIALS               | VCENTER CREDENTIALS (READ-ONLY ACCESS)                  | VCENTER CREDENTIALS (ADMIN ACCESS)                               |
| Collect reservation limits (Guest SDK)                                 | Yes                                    | Yes                            | Yes                                                     | Yes                                                              |
| Collect performance statistics of the VM and the host                  | No                                     | Yes                            | Yes                                                     | Yes                                                              |
| Collect the VM vHW info (CPU count, speed, memory, and number of NICs) | Yes                                    | Yes                            | Yes                                                     | Yes                                                              |
| Collect task and events dump of the VM host                            | No                                     | No                             | Yes                                                     | Yes                                                              |
| Analysis of performance counters, VM and host configuration host       | Minimal - no performance data analysis | Uses performance counters only | Performance counters plus infrastructure info (HA, DRS) | Performance counters plus infrastructure info and licensing info |

### Virtual Machine properties

The **Virtual Machine Properties** table displays information about the virtual machine and the Mitel Virtual Framework (MVF). The information is presented in two columns:

- **Current Dimensions:** Lists the configuration at the time that the current Mitel Virtualization page was loaded. Refreshing the page resets the settings.
- **First Boot Dimensions:** Lists the configuration after the Mitel OVA package has been installed and the settings configured, but before the virtual machine has been powered on for the first time.

| SETTING                                     | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MVF Version                                 | The version number of the Mitel Virtualization Framework (MVF), a software package that enable Mitel applications to run in a virtual infrastructure. MVF has the capacity to support multiple operating systems and hypervisor products. |
| Virtualization Agent Version (VMware Tools) | The version number of VMware Tools, a suite of utilities that enhances the performance of the virtual machine's guest operating system and improves management of the virtual machine.                                                    |
| Hypervisor Version                          | The version number of the VMware ESXi hypervisor that hosts one or more virtual machines and their guest operating systems.                                                                                                               |
| vCPU count                                  | The number of virtual Central Processing Units (vCPUs) configured on this virtual machine.                                                                                                                                                |
| Memory (MB)                                 | The amount of virtual physical memory available for use by the operating system on this virtual machine.                                                                                                                                  |
| Disk size (GB)                              | The virtual disk size available for use by the operating system on this virtual machine.                                                                                                                                                  |

| SETTING                 | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NIC count               | The number of virtual network interface cards configured on this virtual machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| CPU Reservation (MHz)   | The guaranteed minimum allocation of CPU resources for this virtual machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Memory Reservation (MB) | The guaranteed minimum allocation of memory resources for this virtual machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| CPU Limit (MHz)         | The upper limit of CPU resources that can be allocated to this virtual machine. This limit is expressed in concrete units (Megahertz) and cannot be exceeded.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Memory Limit (MB)       | The upper limit of for memory resources that can be allocated to this virtual machine. This limit is expressed in concrete units (Megabytes) and cannot be exceeded.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| vCPU Speed (MHz)        | <p>The speed of the virtual CPU, which is dependant on the speed of your underlying processor. So if you have a 12 cores and a processor speed of 3.36GHz, That means a virtual machine with a single vCPU running a single threaded application can consume 3.36GHz.</p> <p>This setting defines what a single vCPU will consume, not the aggregated amount among multiple vCPUs on a single virtual machine. Accordingly, if you have two vCPUs this figure should be doubled.</p> |

### Storage Monitoring

Use the following settings to specify whether the tool performs file system monitoring and whether it reboots on read-only state.

| SETTING                   | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| File System Monitoring    | Use this setting to specify whether the system monitoring is enabled or disabled. If the main feature is enabled (the default), the system will check the file system for disk errors every five seconds. If any disk errors are discovered, the system will generate a warning notification and send it to the administrator e-mail address configured on the <b>Email Settings</b> screen. |
| Reboot on read-only state | <p>Select <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> to specify whether the system reboots when it enters a read-only state. A read-only state occurs when there are I/O errors on the virtual machine disk drives.</p> <p>The default setting is <b>Yes</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <b>File System Monitoring</b> must be enabled for this feature to be effective.</p>                                           |

### Diagnostic Overview

The VDT constantly monitors the system in order to report on three alarm conditions and the state of the last nightly analysis.

| SETTING            | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hypervisor Version | <p>Indicates whether or not the version of VMware ESXi Hypervisor is supported. The Hypervisor is also known as the Virtual Machine Monitor (VMM).</p> <p>If your ESXi version is not supported and you must switch to a supported version in order to restore monitoring functionality. For example, if you are running ESXi 4.0 or earlier, you must upgrade to version 4.1 or later.</p> |

| SETTING               | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Current Dimensions    | <p>Indicates whether the currently configured application resource dimensions are supported.</p> <p>If your configuration is not supported due to a setting (vCPU count, Memory, Disk size, or NIC count) being out of boundaries, you can resolve any performance issues, by doing the following:</p> <p>Revert to the default configuration for your deployment.</p> <p>Contact Mitel Product Support for assistance.</p> |
| AMC Connectivity      | <p>Indicates whether the Virtual Machine can connect to the Mitel Application Management Center (AMC) for licensing purposes.</p> <p>The two states are Connected and Error. In the Error state, the VM cannot connect to the AMC. Check the networking configuration and Application Resource ID (ARID). See the <i>Mitel Standard Linux Installation and Maintenance Guide</i> for more information.</p>                  |
| Last Nightly Analysis | <p>Indicates the date and time that the last nightly analysis was completed, and whether any problems occurred while it was being run. Upon successful completion, the nightly analysis generates the following log file:</p> <p>NIGHTLY-REPORT-YYYY-MM-DD.txt</p>                                                                                                                                                          |

## Virtualization diagnostics credentials

To enable the VDT to collect statistics for the virtual machine and the host, and then use the statistics to generate log files, you must enter credentials for the vCenter server or ESXi hypervisor.

The information collected depends on the credentials entered:

- Admin login to vCenter - full range of features and statistics.
- Read-only login to vCenter - subset of features and statistics.
- Read-only login to ESXi - subset of features and statistics.
- No credentials - Allocation and Reservation & Limits information only.



**Note:** For optimum results, enter credentials for the vCenter. Entering credentials for the ESXi may result in connectivity problems if settings are changed on the hypervisor.

### Enter new credentials

#### To enter the virtualization diagnostics credentials:

1. Under **Administration**, click **Virtualization**.
2. Under **Virtualization Diagnostics**, enter the following settings.
3. Click **Save**.

| SETTING            | DESCRIPTION                                                                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FQDN or IP address | Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name or IP address of the vCenter or ESXi hypervisor. |
| Username           | Enter the user name required to access the vCenter or ESXi hypervisor.                 |

| SETTING               | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Password              | Enter the password required to access vCenter or ESXi hypervisor.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Nightly Analysis Time | Specify the one-hour period during which the nightly analysis will be run each day. Select hours between 0-1 and 23-24.<br>Upon successful completion, the nightly analysis generates the following log file:<br>NIGHTLY-REPORT-YYYY-MM-DD.txt. |

After a connection is established, the system obtains performance statistics for the virtual machine and the host. You can click **Run Diagnostics** to manually generate log files and an online report.



**Note:** For a newly installed system, wait for at least 15 minutes before clicking **Run Diagnostics**.

### *Remove current credentials*

To remove the virtualization diagnostics credentials:

1. Under **Administration**, click **Virtualization**.
2. Under **Virtualization Diagnostics**, click **Remove**.

You may now enter new credentials.



**Note:** Without credentials, the system will not collect statistics or generate log files for virtualization diagnostics.

### Log files

The system generates log files containing performance and configuration data, and statistical events.

### *Automatically generated log files*

The following log files are generated automatically by the system on a periodic basis.

| REPORT NAME                   | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NIGHTLY-REPORT-YYYY-MM-DD.txt | This report contains the previous day's detailed performance and configuration information, and is generated daily in the Nightly Analysis Time you have specified. The system retains seven reports, deleting the oldest file after seven days. |
| VM-STATS-YYYY-MM-DD.csv       | This report contains virtual machine statistics for the previous week. The system polls for new data every 15 minutes and deletes existing data after seven days.                                                                                |
| HOST-STATS-YYYY-MM-DD.csv     | This report contains host system statistics for the previous week. The system polls for new data every 15 minutes and deletes existing data after seven days.                                                                                    |

| REPORT NAME               | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ALL-CONFIG-YYYY-MM-DD.csv | This report contains all CPU, performance and network configuration statistics concerning the host and virtual machine for the previous week. The system polls for new data every 15 minutes and deletes existing data after seven days. |

### *Manually generated log files*

A number of log files are created when you request them.

**To manually generate the log files and an online report:**

1. Under **Administration**, click **Virtualization**.
2. Under **Virtualization Diagnostics**, click **Run Diagnostics**.

### **Notes:**

1. For a newly installed system, allow it to collect statistics for at least 15 minutes before you click **Run Diagnostics**.
2. If you repeatedly click **Run Diagnostics**, you may exceed the storage capacity of the host server's hard drive.

| REPORT NAME                         | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USER-REPORT-YYYY-MM-DD-HH-MM-SS.txt | <p>This report is similar to the NIGHTLY-REPORT-YYYY-MM-DD.txt report, but it detailed performance and configuration information for the previous week (rather than a single day), collected from the moment you click the Run Diagnostics button.</p> <p>The report file is retained for seven days and then deleted.</p> <p>If you run into a problem you cannot resolve, Mitel Product Support is likely to ask you to sent this log file to them for analysis</p>   |
| USER-SUMMARY.tmp                    | <p>This report is an abbreviated version of the USER-REPORT-YYYY-MM-DD-HH-MM-SS.txt report. It contains performance and configuration overviews for each day of the previous week.</p> <p>This report is presented in two formats:</p> <p>Displayed on the Mitel Virtualization screen. This report is retained until you navigate away from the screen.</p> <p>Recorded in the log files. This file is retained until the Run Diagnostics button is clicked again.</p> |
| VM-EVENTS-YYYY-MM-DD.csv            | The report contains 15 days' activity regarding the operation of the Virtual Machine. This file is retained until <b>Run Diagnostics</b> is clicked again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

### *Log file contents*

Although the log files are primarily intended for use by Mitel Product support, you may use them to troubleshoot basic issues with the following issues:

- **Performance problems:** The system analyzes performance data and if it detects five consecutive "out of bounds" events, an problem will be reported. For example, if the virtual

machine waits longer than two seconds to be serviced by the host, five times in a row, the system will report a “CPU Ready” error. System events are registered every twenty seconds.

- Configuration problems: The system checks configuration data and statistical events on an ongoing basis. If a problem is found, an error is logged immediately.

See the MSL online help for detailed information concerning the system settings which control the generation of log file problems.

### PERFORMANCE PROBLEMS

### DESCRIPTION

|                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CPU Ready (seconds)                 | The virtual machine has exceeded the maximum amount of time that it can wait to be run on the physical CPUs. The default is 2 seconds                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| CPU Usage (percent)                 | The virtual machine has exceeded its CPU capacity limit, which is expressed as a percentage of the total amount available. For example, with a limit of 50%, if the virtual machine has four CPUs with 2 GHz processors, and you are running an application that requires 6 GHz (75% of capacity), the limit has been exceeded by 25%. The default is 50%.     |
| Disk Latency (seconds)              | The virtual machine has exceeded the maximum amount of time permitted for a SCSI command to be issued by the guest operating system to the virtual machine hard disk. The default is 0.02.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Network Usage (MB)                  | The virtual machine has exceeded the maximum network utilization (combined transmit and receive rates, in Megabytes per second). The default is 50.0 MB.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Memory Swapped (MB)                 | The virtual machine has exceeded the maximum amount of memory, in Megabytes, that can be swapped into memory from disk. The default is 0 MB.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Memory Use (MB)                     | The virtual machine has exceeded the maximum amount of memory capacity that it can use, expressed as a percentage of the total amount available. For example, if the virtual machine has 4 GHz of memory, and you are running an application that requires 3 GHz (75% of capacity), an event will be registered. The default value is 50%.                     |
| Number of Packets Dropped (average) | The virtual machine has exceeded the maximum number of received packets that can be dropped at the network interface. The default value is 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Disk Usage (MB)                     | The virtual machine has exceeded the maximum amount of data, in Megabytes per second, that can be read from the virtual machine hard disk. The default value is 30 MB.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Configuration Detection             | Description (Yes/No)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| High VM-to-host CPU ratio           | If Yes is displayed, the ESXi host has exceeded the virtual CPU to host CPU ratio, which is 0.79 by default. For example, if five virtual machines with 4 GHz vCPUs are powered on, and the host has 8 physical/16 logical cores, then the ratio is $4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 \div 16 = 1.25$ . Since 1.25 exceeds 0.79, a potential configuration issue is detected. |
| High VM-to-host Memory ratio        | If Yes is displayed, the ESXi host has exceeded the virtual memory to host memory ratio, which is 1.20 by default. For example, if five VMs are powered on, each using 2 GHz of memory, and the host has 8 GHz of physical memory, then the ratio is $2 + 2 + 2 + 2 + 2 \div 8 = 1.25$ , which will cause an event to be registered.                           |
| Snapshots Present                   | If Yes is displayed, the system checks to determine if snapshots are supported on the virtual machine. Because snapshots create considerable disk I/O load, use of this feature may degrade the voice quality of calls.                                                                                                                                        |

| PERFORMANCE PROBLEMS                                         | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Low CPU Speed (MHz)                                          | If Yes is displayed, the maximum speed of the virtual CPU, which is dependant on the speed of the underlying processor on the ESXi host, has been exceeded.                                                                                        |
| No Hyperthreading (Ignore if running on non-Intel processor) | If Yes is displayed, the system checks to determine if hyperthreading is enabled on the ESXi host.<br>Note: This parameter can only report on Intel processors that support hyperthreading. It cannot report on AMD or other non-Intel processors. |
| vMotion occurred                                             | If Yes is displayed, the system checks to determine if vMotion is enabled on the ESXi host.                                                                                                                                                        |
| Low CPU Reservation (MHz)                                    | If Yes is displayed, the guaranteed minimum allocation of CPU resources for this virtual machine has been exceeded.                                                                                                                                |
| Low Memory Reservation (MB)                                  | If Yes is displayed, the guaranteed minimum allocation of memory resources for this virtual machine has been exceeded.                                                                                                                             |

# Known issues (VMware infrastructure)

This section describes known issues with Mitel virtual appliances running in a VMware infrastructure and describes fixes or work-arounds, where available.

The following known issues are discussed here:

- “Mitel application performance issues when CPU and memory requirements are satisfied” on page 174
- “Mitel Virtual Appliance performance becomes sluggish in the presence of VMware snapshots” on page 175
- “File system becomes read-only, causing Mitel Applications to go out of service” on page 175
- “Virtual Machine is no longer responsive, and is at or close to 100% CPU usage” on page 177
- “Slow network throughput for streaming or large file transfers” on page 177
- “Mitel virtual machines are blocked during power up due to checking file systems unexpected inconsistency error” on page 178
- “Mitel virtual machines experience issues on power up after powering off” on page 179
- “Mitel resiliency solutions not working (such as MCD resiliency or MBG clustering)” on page 179
- “Mitel application message record/playback or voice prompt issues” on page 179
- “Mitel application repeatedly resets after startup, or voice quality issues” on page 180

## Mitel application performance issues when CPU and memory requirements are satisfied

There can be cases where, even though sufficient CPU and memory resources are available for Mitel virtual machines, Mitel applications appear to be performing poorly, with problems such as poor quality voice streaming, message playback disruptions, or dropped calls.

### *Probable cause*

This can often be attributed to one or both of two causes:

1. I/O to and from the virtual machine disk (vmdk) is slow, high latency, or intermittent.
2. Host(s) may not meet minimum processor requirements or are not properly configured for high performance.

### *Resolution*

Use one or both of the following resolutions:

1. Examine the **Virtual Machine Disk Configuration and Statistics** and address any exceptions.



2. Examine host processor, BIOS, and related processor settings, to ensure that they meet the requirements listed in Table 4, "Minimum hardware requirements," on page 9. Correct any settings or move the Mitel applications to fully qualified hosts.

Mitel Virtual Appliance performance becomes sluggish in the presence of VMware snapshots

Mitel Virtual Appliance performance is sluggish, possibly after upgrade. Depending on the virtual appliance, this could appear as poor voice quality.

### *Probable cause*

Snapshots were created before upgrade, and were not deleted before restarting the Mitel Virtual Appliance. The more snapshots there are, the more the performance will be degraded.

### *Resolution*

To restore performance, delete all of the VM snapshots.

File system becomes read-only, causing Mitel Applications to go out of service

Mitel Applications may cease to function if MSL switches the file system to "read-only" in an effort to prevent file system corruption. Before concluding that a read-only file system is the problem, confirm that MSL has switched to read-only by selecting the Mitel virtual machine, and clicking **Launch Virtual Machine Console**. Observe the output, which may indicate that the file system is now read-only. The console is the only place where you will be able to see the read-only trigger, since logs cannot be written to disk in the read-only state.

### *Probable cause*

Very high disk latency between the ESXi host and the virtual machine's data store over short time period can trigger file system protection and the read-only state in MSL.

### *Resolution*

To restore service immediately, right-click on the Mitel virtual machine, select **Power and Restart Guest**. Use the Virtual Machine Console to confirm that system shut-down and start-up occur before confirming that service is restored.

To prevent the problem from recurring, determine whether a SAN connection disruption occurred, and examine **Virtual Machine Disk Configuration and Statistics**. Address any failures or exceptions.

It is very important to make sure the system virtual disk can sustain the I/O throughput requirement and the disk latency requirement. Because the physical storage is shared, performance of storage could be momentarily reduced or degraded as the workload increases.

Other external factors can also affect storage performance. For example, congestion in the storage network induces network latency that, in turn, increases the I/O latency on storage devices. In general, storage device average latency should not be more than 30 ms. Performance of virtual machine will be affected as storage latency increases.

If SSD is used as part of the storage device, the maximum acceptable average latency should be less. Disk I/O latency can be monitored by VMware vCenter Server. vCenter Server can trigger actions (send notification to system administrators, for example) if it sees a degraded or abnormal latency on storage devices. For example, vCenter server can be set up to send warnings if disk latency exceeds 1000 ms for one minute, and send alerts if disk latency exceeds 3000 ms for one minute. The following procedure is required to enable Storage I/O monitoring in VMware vCenter Server from vSphere Client.



**Note:** The threshold values are just examples. The administrator of the virtual infrastructure must determine the actual values suitable within the environment. The steps that follow are based on vSphere 5.5 and may be slightly different in other versions.

1. Login to vCenter Server from VMware vSphere (Windows) Client.
2. On the left pane, highlight the virtual machine to be monitored.
3. Select the **Alarm** tab on the right hand side pane.
4. Under the row of tabs, select **Definitions view**.
5. Right-click on the empty space on the right pane, and select **New Alarm**.
6. In the **General** tab, fill in the **Alarm name** and **Description**. In **Alarm Type**, select:
  - a. **Virtual Machine**
  - b. **Monitor for specific conditions or state**
  - c. **Enable this alarm**
7. In the **Triggers** tab, right-click empty space to **Add Trigger**. A trigger entry is created. Set the following conditions:
  - a. **Trigger Type** to **VM Max Total Disk Latency (ms)**.
  - b. **Condition** to **Is Above**
  - c. **Warning** to **1000**
  - d. **Condition Length** to **for 1 minute**
  - e. **Alert** to **3000**
  - f. **Condition Length** to **for 1 minute**
8. Select **Trigger if any of the conditions are satisfied**.
9. In the **Reporting** tab, enter **0** in both text boxes.
10. In the **Actions** tab, right-click on empty space and select **Add Action**.
11. Change **Action** to **Send a notification email**:
  - a. In the **Configuration** field, enter the e-mail address.
  - b. For all condition transitions, select **Once**.
12. Right-click on the empty space to add another action, if needed.
13. Click **OK** to close the dialog box. There may be a popup saying, "vCenter e-mail settings are not configured". Click **OK** to close all of the dialog boxes.

14. If vCenter e-mail settings are not configured:

- a. In vCenter, go to **Administration > vCenter Server settings > Mail**.
- b. Enter the **SMTP Server name** and the **Sender Account name**.

System administrators should be notified when storage performance degradation begins. This should allow enough time for them to correct the problem before storage performance falls to an unacceptable level.

Virtual Machine is no longer responsive, and is at or close to 100% CPU usage

A Mitel Virtual Machine consumes CPU reaching near 100% continuously, and becomes unresponsive. Memory consumption may also increase to near 100%.

*Probable cause*

The SAN volume hosting the Mitel virtual machine's vmdk is no longer available, possibly due to network connectivity or SAN system failure.

*Resolution*

Confirm that the SAN volume is no longer accessible from the ESXi host running the Mitel Virtual Machine. This should be reported next to the data store name in the vSphere client, such as:

datastore1 (inactive)

or

datastore1 (inaccessible)

Shut down (**Shut Down Guest**) the Mitel virtual machine, if it is responsive. If it is not responsive, plan and execute a restart of the ESXi host. Investigate and address the issue with the SAN volume.

Slow network throughput for streaming or large file transfers

Large file transfers to or from a Mitel virtual machine may have very slow throughput, or streaming media between multiple Mitel virtual machines may be poor quality or interrupted.

*Probable cause*

Large Receive Offload (LRO) may be enabled for the VMware vmxnet3 kernel module within MSL. The vmxnet3 kernel module is a software driver used to support all VMxnet3 virtual network cards used within a virtual machine.

Some Linux-based operating systems such as MSL do not support LRO. MSL will ignore LRO packets and they will require re-transmission.

### *Resolution*

For up-to-date information on this issue, check the VMware knowledge base at <http://kb.vmware.com/>; for example <http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1027511>.

Mitel virtual machines are blocked during power up due to checking file systems unexpected inconsistency error

After deploying a Mitel virtual appliance and powering on the Mitel virtual machine created, the operating system boot does not finish successfully. When examining the Virtual Machine Console, the **Checking Filesystems** command will indicate **FAILED** and report an error similar to the following output will be seen:

```
Checking filesystems
/dev/mapper/VolGroup-lv_root: Superblock last mount time (Thu Nov 22 06:48:26 20
12,
    now = Fri Oct 22 05:52:34 2010) is in the future.

/dev/mapper/VolGroup-lv_root: UNEXPECTED INCONSISTENCY; RUN fsck MANUALLY.
    (i.e., without -a or -p options)

[FAILED]

*** An error occurred during the file system check.
*** Dropping you to a shell; the system will reboot
*** when you leave the shell.
Give root password for maintenance
(or type Control-D to continue): _
```

### *Probable cause*

The ESXi host that the Mitel virtual appliance was deployed to does not have the correct system time set. The incorrect time is pushed from the ESXi host to the virtual machine on power up. This time is earlier than the last one recorded in the MSL file system. This causes interactive file maintenance to be performed, however, this requires a root password which is not yet set if this is the first boot of the Mitel Virtual Machine.

### *Resolution*

1. Shut down (**Shut Down Guest**) the Mitel virtual machine.
2. Change the system time of the ESXi server hosting the Mitel Virtual Machine to the current time.
3. Power on the Mitel virtual machine and observe MSL boot-up in the Virtual Machine Console.

### Mitel virtual machines experience issues on power up after powering off

On Power On of a Mitel virtual machine that was shut down with a Power Off, startup delays, file system repairs, or startup failures occur.

#### *Probable cause*

The Power Off request disrupted the running applications or system state in the Mitel virtual machine. The virtual machine disk may be corrupted or in an inconsistent state

#### *Resolution*

Always use **Shut Down Guest** to turn off the virtual machine. This is a safe, graceful shutdown. Do not use **Power Off**, since this effects an immediate shutdown, equivalent to sudden powering off of a physical server.

### Mitel resiliency solutions not working (such as MCD resiliency or MBG clustering)

Mitel resiliency solution is not exhibiting the correct resiliency behavior when an ESXi host or its dependent resources become unavailable.

#### *Probable cause*

Mitel virtual machines configured for resiliency must reside on different ESXi hosts to ensure that one ESXi-related outage does not affect all Mitel virtual machines in a resilient configuration.

#### *Resolution*

Ensure that Mitel virtual machines configured for resiliency never run on the same ESXi server. If deploying a resilient solution to one ESXi cluster, ensure that Distributed Resources Scheduler (DRS) anti-affinity rules are set up for the ESXi cluster to ensure that the Mitel Virtual Machines are distributed among different ESXi hosts in the cluster. Also see [“Anti-affinity rules” on page 32](#) and [“Other virtual appliance management considerations” on page 31](#).

### Mitel application message record/playback or voice prompt issues

Mitel applications appear to be performing poorly with respect to message record and playback, prompt playing, and so on, with problems such as poor quality voice record or playback, message playback disruptions, or similar.

#### *Probable cause*

This can often be attributed to high disk latency or slow storage IOPs, or intermittent disk access disruptions. This could include issues with the overall storage environment, or issues in configuration of the VM's virtual disk.

### *Resolution*

Examine and address issues in Virtual Machine storage configuration.

1. Select Edit Settings for the Mitel virtual machine, and under the Hardware tab, select each Hard disk used, and confirm that Disk Provisioning Type is set to Thick Provision Lazy Zeroed or Thick Provision Eager Zeroed. It should NOT be set to Thin Provisioned. If Thin Provisioned is set, conversion to one of the Thick provisioning options is recommended. Convert to a Thick Provision method by moving the virtual machine to another data store:
  - a. Select Migrate, Change Datastore option.
  - b. Change Select a virtual disk format to Thick Provision Lazy Zeroed.
  - c. Select a different data store.
  - d. Complete the wizard to start the migration.
2. Select the Mitel virtual machine, open Snapshot Manager and ensure that there are no snapshots. If there are snapshots listed, verify that all snapshots are no longer required; then click Delete All to remove them.
3. Select the Mitel Virtual Machine, click the Performance tab, select the Advanced button and investigate the Datastore and Disk statistics for latency and read/write throughout. (Write Latency, Read Latency and/or Highest Latency).
4. Examine these values over the time period when issues were experienced. Values should be consistently near 0 ms latency. Consistent latency responses above 30 ms or peak values over 80 ms can result in many performance problems. Read/Write throughput should meet or exceed requirements for the application if running at full load (see [Table 8 on page 24](#)). If high latency or low throughput is observed, it is highly recommended that you locate and migrate the virtual machine to a data store that is performing better.

### Mitel application repeatedly resets after startup, or voice quality issues

Mitel logs files show missing interrupts, high clock skew, hardware watchdog warnings or similar.

### *Probable Cause*

Host(s) may not meet minimum processor requirements or not properly configured for high performance.

### *Resolution*

Examine host processor, BIOS and related processor settings, to ensure they meet requirements listed in [Table 4, "Minimum hardware requirements," on page 9](#). Correct any settings or move to fully qualified hosts.

# Appendix A

## GLOSSARY





## Glossary of terms and acronyms

| Acronym or term                       | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5-tuple                               | <p>5-tuple is a term used in computer networks to refer to a set of five different values that make up a Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) connection.</p> <p>The 5-tuple is made up of source IP address, destination IP address, source port number, destination port number and the protocol in use.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| ACD                                   | Automatic Call Distribution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| AMC                                   | Applications Management Center (used for Mitel license management) - A Mitel Internet service to which Mitel applications authenticate themselves and retrieve license information specific to their unique ARID, as entered by the Installer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| ARID                                  | Application Record ID - A bundle of Mitel licenses managed as single set with a unique identifier; used for a single deployment of MSL.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CC                                    | Mitel Contact Center                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| vCC                                   | Virtual Contact Center                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| vCCM                                  | Virtual Contact Center Management                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| vCCS                                  | Virtual Contact Center Solutions (now called MiContact Center)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| CSM<br>vCSM                           | Customer Service Manager (now called MiContact Center Office) - A contact center solution available exclusively on MiVoice Office (previously known as Mitel 5000 CP), a communications solution for small and medium-sized businesses. It enables basic contact centers or workgroups to efficiently monitor, manage, and route calls. It provides real-time business intelligence, including call performance and agent activity reporting, as well as agent productivity tools, including screen pop and Personal Information Manager (PIM) integration. |
| DLM                                   | <p>Designated License Manager</p> <p>Starting in MCD Release 6.0, vMCD and MiVoice Business 7.0+ can act as a DLM, able to host license sharing for a group of MCDs.</p> <p>In MCD Release 5.0 and previous releases, MCD can run a License Manager that can participate in group license sharing, but cannot act as a DLM.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| DMZ                                   | De-Militarized Zone: A computer host or small network inserted as a "neutral zone" between a company's private network and the outside public network. It prevents outside users from getting direct access to a server that contains company data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| DRS<br>Distributed Resource Scheduler | VMware Distributed Resource Scheduler - A VMware feature allowing dynamic load sharing across hosts within a vSphere cluster.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| dvSwitch                              | Distributed vSwitch - VMware vCNS fully featured vSwitch, configured at the data center level across multiple hosts. See also vSwitch.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| ESM                                   | Embedded System Management; also called the System Administration Tool                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| ESX                                   | Main Hypervisor from VMware. Phased out in favour of ESXi in release 4.1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| ESXi                                  | The latest variant of ESX. It has a smaller footprint because it does not require or include the ESX Service Console.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Acronym or term         | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FT<br>Fault Tolerance   | VMware Fault Tolerance feature - A VMware feature that improves on High Availability (HA) by providing zero downtime and zero data loss in the event of a failure. A secondary virtual machine (VM) mirrors the execution state of the primary VM (a pair of VMs running in lock step, same IP, same MAC address, and so on). In the event of a failure, the secondary VM picks up execution without any loss of connectivity or transactions. Fault Tolerance introduces large latencies in the running virtual machines. Fault Tolerance is not suitable for Mitel applications. |
| guest                   | The guest, or guest O/S, is the operating system that runs inside a virtual machine. It is almost completely unaware it is running on a virtual platform.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| HA<br>High Availability | VMware High Availability feature - In the event of physical server failure, affected virtual machines are automatically restarted on other production servers with spare capacity. In the case of operating system failure, VMware HA restarts the affected virtual machine on the same physical server.<br><br>For a similar service, but without the downtime of HA see Fault Tolerance (FT). For fault tolerance at the data center scale, see Site Recovery Manager (SRM).                                                                                                     |
| host                    | The host is the hardware the hypervisor and its virtual machines reside on and run on.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| hypervisor              | A software entity that implements virtualization by presenting a virtual operating platform to one or more guest operating systems and monitors their execution. Also called virtual machine monitor (VMM). Examples are VMware ESXi and Microsoft Hyper-V Server (standalone).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Hyper-V                 | Hyper-V is a Microsoft Windows native hypervisor that enables platform virtualization on x86-64 systems.<br><br>Hyper-V exists in two variants:<br><br>As a stand-alone product called Hyper-V Server: Four major versions have so far been released: Hyper-V Server 2012 R2 (containing the current release of Hyper-V), Hyper-V Server 2012, Hyper-V Server 2008 R2 and Hyper-V Server 2008.<br><br>As an install able role in Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 and the x64 edition of Windows 8 Pro.                    |
| ISO image               | An ISO image is an archive file of an optical disc, a type of disk image composed of the data contents of every written sector of an optical disc, including the optical disc file system. ISO image files usually have a file extension of .iso.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| I/O                     | Input/Output                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| LBG                     | Live Business Gateway - Enables enterprises to implement IP-based solutions. Working with Microsoft® Office Communications Server 2007 R2 or Microsoft Lync™ 2010 Server, a SIP-based presence and collaboration server, the Mitel / Microsoft partnership delivers advanced applications for global communication and collaboration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Licensing Mechanism     | Refers to the procedures applications use to acquire software licenses from the licensing authority, and the delivery and maintenance of the software licenses. At Mitel, the licensing mechanism involves ARID activation, synchronization and de-activation. Current Mitel licensing mechanisms allow software licenses to be obtained online or offline, but only the online method is supported for virtual appliances..                                                                                                                                                       |

| Acronym or term                                                                                             | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Licensing Model                                                                                             | Refers to the business logic and technologies about the scheme on how a valid software licenses are determined and granted to applications. The licensing model may change from time to time to reflect the current business need. At Mitel this intelligence is held in the Applications Management Center (AMC). |
| Linux Integration Tools                                                                                     | A set of drivers that enable synthetic device support in supported Linux virtual machines under Hyper-V.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| LM                                                                                                          | License Manager                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| MAS<br>vMAS                                                                                                 | Mitel Application Suite (now called MiCollab)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| MBG<br>MBG Virtual                                                                                          | MiVoice Border Gateway - A highly scalable and optionally redundant solution that gives remote workers, road warriors, and day-extenders seamless access to the voice and data capabilities of the office, wherever they are.                                                                                      |
| MCA                                                                                                         | Mitel Collaboration Advanced (now called MiCollab Audio, Web, and Video (AWV))                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| MCD<br>vMCD                                                                                                 | Mitel Communications Director (now called MiVoice Business) - Highly scalable, proven IP-PBX software; the foundation of the Mitel Freedom Architecture.                                                                                                                                                           |
| MICD                                                                                                        | Multi-Instance Communications Director (now called MiVoice Business Multi-instance) - Delivers multiple instances of Mitel's award-winning MCD call control software on a single industry standard server.                                                                                                         |
| MiCollab                                                                                                    | Previously known as Mitel Application Suite (MAS)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| MiCollab Audio, Web and Video Conferencing                                                                  | Previously known as Mitel Collaboration Advanced (MCA)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| MiCollab Client                                                                                             | Previously known as Unified Communicator Advanced (UCA)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| MiCollab Unified Messaging (UM)                                                                             | Previously known as MAS NuPoint                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| MiCollab with Voice                                                                                         | An appliance that includes MiVoice Business with MiCollab applications. Now called MiVoice Business Express.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| MiVoice Business<br>MiVoice Business Virtual<br>MiVoice Business for ISS<br>MiVoice Business Multi-instance | Previously known as:<br>Mitel Communications Director (MCD)<br>Virtual Mitel Communications Director (vMCD)<br>Mitel Communications Director for Industry Standard Servers (MCD for ISS)<br>Multi-instance Communications Director (MICD)                                                                          |
| MiVoice Business Express                                                                                    | A virtual appliance that includes MiVoice Business with MiCollab applications.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| MiContact Center Business<br>MiContact Center Enterprise                                                    | Previously known as:<br>Contact Center Business Edition<br>Contact Center Enterprise Edition                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| MiVB                                                                                                        | MiVoice Business                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| MiVoice Office                                                                                              | Previously known as Mitel 5000 CP.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| MSL                                                                                                         | Mitel Standard Linux - A Linux distribution based on Red Hat Linux, created and maintained by Mitel, and on which most Mitel applications are developed.                                                                                                                                                           |
| MVF                                                                                                         | Mitel Virtual Framework - An install-able component that delivers all the generic Mitel components to support running in a virtual infrastructure.                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Acronym or term          | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NAT                      | Network Address Translation - A technique in which a router or firewall rewrites the source and/or destination Internet addresses in a packet as it passes through, typically to allow multiple hosts to connect to the Internet via a single external IP address. NAT keeps track of outbound connections and distributes incoming packets to the correct machine.                                                                       |
| NFS                      | Network File System - A distributed file system protocol originally developed by Sun Microsystems, allowing a user on a client computer to access files over a network in a manner similar to the way local storage is accessed.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| NP UM                    | NuPoint Unified Messenger - Mitel's voice mail product. Sometimes written as NPM.<br><br>NuPoint functionality is also available within MiCollab, where the feature is called MiCollab Unified Messaging (UM). This was previously known as MAS NuPoint,                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Offline Licensing        | Offline licensing refers to the scenario where Mitel products obtain software licenses by generating and saving information required for another piece of software to send licensing requests to the AMC, and receive licensing responses from the AMC. Software licenses from license responses are copied back to the virtual appliances to enable software features.<br><br>Offline licensing is not supported for virtual appliances. |
| Online Licensing         | Online licensing refers to the scenario where Mitel virtual appliances obtain software licenses by sending licensing requests to the Mitel AMC and receiving licensing responses from the Mitel AMC through networking. AMC licensing traffic could travel directly between the nodes or through a licensing proxy.                                                                                                                       |
| Open virtual appliance   | Defined by VMware as "an appliance that is accessible to end customers for modifications and edits. The O/S and the application, for example, can be patched individually and agents may be installed at the customer's site."                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| OVA                      | Open Virtualization Archive format - a compact, single 'tar' file packaging of OVF.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| OVF                      | Open Virtualization Format - A format for the packaging and distribution of one or more virtual machines. A collection of items in a single folder, most commonly a description file (*.ovf), a manifest file (*.mf), and virtual machine state files (*.vhd or *.vmdk)..                                                                                                                                                                 |
| PCoIP®                   | PC-over-IP protocol: Teradici™ - VMware proprietary remote display virtual desktop presentation protocol.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| pCPU                     | Physical CPU - Refers to the number of logical CPUs, or threads, that are available in a machine, rather than actual physical cores. For example, a CPU with hyperthreading enabled might have 4 real physical cores, but will report on 8 pCPU. Also see vCPU.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| PIM                      | Personal Information Manager                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| PSTN                     | Public Switched Telephone Network -The network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| RDN                      | Remote Directory Number - Remote portable directory numbers belong to devices that are connected to remote cluster elements. In relation to the network element that you are programming, all other elements in the cluster network are remote elements.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| RDN Synchronization Mode | RDN Synchronization Mode is the data model used for post-4.0 releases of the MCD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| RDP                      | Remote Display Protocol: Microsoft proprietary remote display virtual desktop presentation protocol.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

| Acronym or term  | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RTP              | Real-time Transport Protocol version: The standard protocol for carrying media streams such as voice audio and video between end-points.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| SAN              | Storage Area Network - A high-speed special-purpose network (or subnetwork) that interconnects different kinds of data storage devices with associated data servers, on behalf of a larger network of users. See also vSAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| SBC              | Session Border Controller                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| SLA              | Service Level Agreement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| SMB              | Small and Medium-size Businesses                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Software upgrade | Software upgrade requires a valid software license, a copy of the new software and possibly some additional resources. This document focuses only on the licensing portion of the upgrade.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| SRC              | Secure Recording Connector - A feature of MiVoice Border Gateway that facilitates the recording of Mitel-encrypted voice streams by third-party call recording equipment.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| SRM              | VMware Site Recovery Manager - A VMware product that allows the virtual machines at one site to fail over to a secondary site if the primary site experiences a catastrophic outage. This is not a hot failover; the secondary site will take 10's of minutes or more to become fully functional.                                                                                                                                |
| UCA<br>vUCA      | Mitel Unified Communicator Advanced (now called MiCollab Client)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| VA               | See Virtual appliance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| VADP             | vStorage APIs for Data Protection                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| vApp             | A VMware term that describes a solution that contains multiple Virtual Machines configured to work together for a cloud environment, and packaged as an OVF. Not to be confused with a VA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| vCA              | MiVoice Call Accounting - Included in MiContact Center                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| vCC<br>vIVR      | Mitel Virtual Contact Center (now called MiContact Center) - Allows easy deployment and management of a virtual contact center to achieve superior customer service, effective resource utilization, and business continuity. Includes Virtual MiVoice Call Accounting (vCA) and Virtual Intelligent Voice Routing (vIVR).                                                                                                       |
| vCD              | vCloud Director - VMware product                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| vCNS             | VMware vCloud Networking and Security - VMware security and networking components of vCloud Director Suite, including vShield Manager, Edge, App, and Endpoint components.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| vCPU             | Virtual CPU - Refers to the number of virtual processor cores that a virtual machine needs to operate correctly. When a virtual machine is scheduled to run, the hypervisor maps its vCPUs to physical cores on the host.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| vCSM             | Virtual Customer Service Manager (now called MiContact Center Office) - A contact center solution, available exclusively on MiVoice Office. It enables basic contact centers or workgroups to efficiently monitor, manage, and route calls. It provides real-time business intelligence, including call performance and agent activity reporting, as well as agent productivity tools, including screen pop and PIM integration. |
| vDC              | Virtual Data Center - Pool of resources dedicated to Provider (system level) or Organizations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Acronym or term   | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Virtual appliance | Defined by VMware as: "a pre-built software solution, comprised of one or more virtual machines that is packaged, maintained, updated, and managed as a unit."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| vApp              | Virtual appliance - A virtualized application, or solution, consisting of one or more VMs, packaged in OVF/OVA format.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| VDT               | Virtualization Diagnostic Tool - Simplifies the gathering of diagnostic information by providing the ability to extract statistical information from the service provider virtual infrastructure automatically for use.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| VHD               | Microsoft Virtual Hard Disk - The Virtual Hard Disk (VHD) format is a publicly-available image format specification that allows encapsulation of the hard disk into an individual file for use by the operating system as a virtual disk in all the same ways physical hard disks are used. These virtual disks are capable of hosting native file systems (NTFS, FAT, exFAT, and UDFS) while supporting standard disk and file operations. VHD API support allows management of the virtual disks. Virtual disks created with the VHD API can function as boot disks. |
| VHDX              | VHDX is a Hyper-V virtual hard disk (VHD) format found in Windows Server 2012. The main advantage of switching to VHDX is its increased storage capacity of 64 TB (terabytes), instead of VHD's standard storage limit of 2 TB. Other advantages of VHDX include file corruption protection and the ability to create differencing disks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| VLAN              | Virtual Local Area Network - A group of hosts with a common set of requirements that communicate as if they were attached to the same broadcast domain, regardless of their physical location.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| VM                | Virtual Machine - A completely isolated guest operating system installation within a normal host operating system. Modern virtual machines are implemented with either a software emulation or hardware virtualization or (in most cases) both together.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| vMAS              | Virtual Mitel Applications Suite (now called MiCollab) - Leverages VMware vSphere to enable businesses to consolidate Mitel's leading unified communications applications in the data center.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| vMCA              | Virtual Mitel Collaboration Advanced (now called MiCollab Audio, Web, and Video Conferencing)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| vMCD              | Virtual Mitel Communications Director (now called MiVoice Business Virtual) - A virtual telephony services platform that provides IP-PBX features for small to large enterprises. It offers the same MiVoice Business software deployed on the Mitel 3300 IP Communications Platform (ICP) and industry standard servers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| VMDK              | Virtual Machine Disk - File format for a type of virtual appliance developed from VMware products. It is proprietary to VMware, but the format is open and documented.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| vMotion           | VMware vMotion - A VMware feature allowing VMs to be moved automatically from host to host within a cluster. Several other VMware features make use of this capability (DRS and DPM, for example).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| VMM               | Virtual Machine Manager - See hypervisor.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| vNIC              | Virtual Network Interface Card                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| vOIG              | Mitel Virtual Open Integration Gateway                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Acronym or term | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| vSAN            | VMware Virtual SAN™ - Virtual SAN is a new software-defined storage solution that is fully integrated with vSphere. Virtual SAN aggregates locally attached disks in a vSphere cluster to create a storage solution that rapidly can be provisioned from VMware vCenter™ during virtual machine provisioning operations.                                     |
| vSwitch         | Virtual Switch - A VMware vCNS virtual switch, an emulation of a layer 2 LAN switch resource available for connecting virtual machines to each other within the VMware infrastructure and/or to real physical network resources.<br>The vSwitch is configured at the individual host level. It includes fewer features than the dvSwitch. See also dvSwitch. |
| vUCA Server     | Mitel Virtual Unified Communicator Advanced Server (now called MiCollab Client Services) - Combines the call control capabilities of Mitel communications platforms with contact management, dynamic status, and collaboration applications to simplify and enhance real-time communications.                                                                |
| vUCC            | Mitel Virtual Unified Communication and Collaboration virtual appliance (now called MiVoice Business Express)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |





# Appendix B

## VMWARE VSPHERE STORAGE SETUP GUIDELINES



# VMware vSphere storage setup guidelines for Mitel virtual appliances



**CAUTION:** Recommendations in this document are intended to help build a better storage subsystem for hosting Mitel virtual appliances in VMware environment. All recommendations should be used at the discretion of your virtual infrastructure specialists. Always refer to official VMware documentations and recommendations for designing and implementing your VMware virtual infrastructure.

---

This chapter describes some ESXi storage options and recommends some storage configurations that can be optimized for running Mitel virtual appliances on ESXi hosts. Various options and considerations are discussed first, with recommendations to follow. Other practices and more advanced areas specific to VMware and real-time, latency sensitive workloads are also mentioned for considerations.

## Storage virtualization

ESXi hosts provide storage virtualization (also called virtual disk), which logically abstracts the physical storage layer from virtual machines. ESXi virtual machines use virtual disks the same way a physical machine would use a local disk drive. However, a virtual disk can be mapped to one large physical file, a physical disk, or a set of files that are located either locally on the ESXi host or remotely.

A virtual machine uses a virtual SCSI controller to access virtual disks. The virtual SCSI controllers can be any of the following:

- BusLogic Parallel
- LSI Logic Parallel
- LSI Logic SAS
- VMware Paravirtual

The latest Windows operating systems use LSI Logic SAS by default, and most of the advanced Linux operating systems use LSI Logic Parallel by default. Whether the storage devices are being accessed through parallel SCSI, iSCSI, network, Fiber Channel, or FCoE, they are transparent to the guest operating system and applications running on the virtual machine.

## Hard disk drive types

Hard disk drives are used to construct virtual disks. There are two major types of hard disk drives: mechanical hard disk drives and solid state disk drives.

### Mechanical hard disk drive

Traditional hard disk drives use rotating mechanical disks as electromechanical devices to store data. Since it takes time to move a read/write head to the specific region on a rotating disc to access information, access time is slower when compared to a solid state disk drive. Hard disk

drives have moving parts: the rotating disk and the moving read/write head. The overall average access latency is affected by the speed of spindle rotation and the read/write head access time. The data interface is one of SATA, SAS, or Fiber Channel.

### Solid state disk (SSD) drive

Solid State disks use semiconductors as the storage medium rather than rotating disks. Since there are no moving parts, SSDs provide much faster access to data than conventional hard disk drives. Like mechanical hard disk drives, SSDs come with different interfaces: SATA, SAS, and Fiber Channel. One of the disadvantages of using SSD is its shorter service life. Storage cells inside a SSD do not survive as many write cycles as mechanical disks do. Operators must carefully monitor how intensively the SSD device is utilized to calculate its estimated lifetime.

## Types of storage

There are two major types of physical storage.

- **Local Storage:** stores information on disks that are directly connected to the host, either internally or externally.
- **Networked Storage:** stores information on external disks or arrays that attached to the host through a high-speed network.

### Local storage

Local storage is directly connected to ESXi hosts, either internally or externally. It can be accessed by only one host and cannot be shared across multiple hosts. Storage access is fast because it is accessible only by the attached host. It also creates a single point of failure because storage access is impossible when the host fails.

### Networked storage

Networked Storage consists of external storage systems connected to ESXi hosts through a high-speed storage network. The networked storage can be shared among ESXi hosts; it can be accessed by multiple hosts concurrently, and is therefore eliminated as a single point of failure for local storage.

Networked Storage can be implemented by using the following network storage technologies:

- Fiber Channel (FC)
- iSCSI
- NFS
- Shared Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)
- Virtual SAN

### *Fiber Channel (FC)*

FC SAN is a very high performance type of storage device. The ESXi host must be equipped with Fiber Channel host bus adapters (HBA) and Fiber Channel switches to connect to the FC SAN. It uses Fiber Channel protocol and a Fiber Channel network to transport SCSI traffic.

A less expensive alternative is to use FCoE (Fiber Channel over Ethernet) adapters on an Ethernet network as the physical network to transport SCSI traffic using Fiber Channel protocol.

### *iSCSI*

iSCSI packages SCSI traffic into the TCP/IP protocol and it travels through a standard TCP/IP network instead of the specialized FC network. ESXi host serves as iSCSI initiator that communicates with iSCSI targets in remote iSCSI storage systems. ESXi host supports two types of iSCSI connections:

- **Hardware iSCSI:** available through a third-party adapter capable of off-loading iSCSI and network processing.
- **Software iSCSI:** a software-based iSCSI initiator provided by VMware. It uses VMkernel to connect to the storage without any specialized third-party adapter.

### *NFS*

ESXi hosts can use Network File System (NFS) version 3 to communicate with NAS or NFS servers for accessing virtual disks. While SCSI is a block-level type of access, NFS is a file-level type of access. In theory, the performance is lower when compared to block-based access types.

### *Shared Serial Attached SCSI (SAS)*

Shared SAS is a newer technology that depends on hardware vendors. It has the advantage of cost, performance, and simplicity over other storage technologies in localized environments.

### *Virtual SAN*

Virtual SAN is a distributed layer of software that runs natively as part of the ESXi hypervisor. Virtual SAN aggregates local or direct-attached disks of a host cluster and creates a single storage pool that is shared across all hosts in the cluster. Virtual SAN offers some of the benefits of SAN without the need to purchase a real SAN.

Mitel virtual appliances support deployment on Virtual SAN. However, Virtual SAN has its own limitations and requires additional effort to setup and configure. Consult the VMware documentation to make sure that Virtual SAN will meet your needs before deploying it.

## RAID levels

RAID is a data storage virtualization technology that combines multiple disk drives into a single logical unit for the purposes of data redundancy and/or performance improvement. Data can be distributed across the drives in one of several ways, referred to as RAID levels. Each RAID level provides a different balance between reliability, availability, performance and capacity. Each RAID level inherits a specific write penalty. The write penalty is a measure of the extra waiting time for parity info or redundant info to be written onto the array of disks. A list of some popular RAID configurations is shown in the following sections.

### RAID 0

RAID 0 provides no data redundancy or fault tolerance. It improves performance through the use of parallel read and write operations across multiple disk drives. RAID 0 has no error

detection mechanism, so failure of one disk causes data loss on the array. Since there is no parity information to calculate, and only the data is written onto the disk, this type of RAID array has a write penalty of 1.

### RAID 1

RAID 1 uses mirroring. Data is written identically to two or more drives, producing a mirrored set. Each read request is served by the disk with the lowest seek latency and rotational latency. Write performance is degraded, compared to RAID 0 because all drives being mirrored must be updated. However, RAID 1 provides redundancy and the disk array continues to operate as long as at least one drive is functioning. Because data is written to two disks (requires two write operations), RAID 1 has a write penalty of 2.

### RAID 10

RAID 10 is a nested RAID level of RAID 1 and RAID 0. It creates a striped set from a series of mirrored drives. The array can sustain multiple drive losses, as long as no mirror loses all of its drives. Since RAID 0 carries a write penalty of 1 (no penalty), RAID 10 has the same write penalty as RAID 1, which is 2.

### RAID 5

RAID 5 uses block-level striping with distributed parity. Parity information is distributed among the drives. It requires all drives but one to be present to operate. Upon a single drive failure subsequent reads can be calculated from the distributed parity. RAID 5 requires a minimum of three disks, and it is seriously affected by array rebuild time and the chance of failure during rebuild. RAID 5 has a write penalty of 4.

### RAID 6

RAID 6 uses block-level striping with double distributed parity. Double parity provides fault tolerance for up to two failed drives. RAID 6 has a write penalty of 6.

## Virtual disk modes

VMware Virtual Disks can be operated in a number of modes with different behaviors. After a virtual machine is created manually, without first startup, the mode of the virtual disk can be changed in **Edit Settings** on the virtual machine (in vSphere client).

### Independent persistent

In this mode, changes are written and remain on the disk (persistent), providing the best performance. However, snapshots cannot be taken on an independent persistent disk. Since most backup software needs to create a snapshot of a virtual disk to do backups, operators need to handle backups on independent persistent disks differently.

### Independent non-persistent

In this mode, changes are appended to a redo log. The redo log is erased when the virtual machine is powered off or reverts to a snapshot, causing changes to be discarded. Because the redo log tracks the changes in the file system of the virtual machine, performance is not as high as for disks in independent persistent mode.

### Dependent

In this mode, changes are appended to a redo log that persists between power cycles. Similar to Independent non-persistent mode, disk performance of dependent disks are lower than for independent persistent mode. This is the Mitel default.

## Virtual disk types

VMware virtual disks can be prepared in a few different ways.

### Thick-provisioned

Thick provisioned disks have all their space allocated at creation time. Because the space is pre-allocated it takes more time to create. There are two types of thick-provisioned disk.

#### *Eager-zeroed*

Eager-zeroed disks have all the space pre-allocated and zeroed out at the time of creation. It takes more time to create the disk, but the pre-zeroing action results in the best disk performance.

#### *Lazy-zeroed*

Lazy-zeroed disks have all the space pre-allocated at creation time, but blocks are zeroed only on first write. It reduces creation time but reduces performance the first time a block is written.

### Thin-provisioned

Thin-provisioned disks have space allocated and zeroed upon the first write, as opposed to upon creation. For the first write on any unwritten file block this method carries a higher I/O cost. However, subsequent writes on the same blocks have the same performance as eager-zeroed thick disks.

## Partition alignment

Earlier versions of ESX/ESXi create VMFS3 partitions with 64 KB alignment. The 64 KB alignment is retained even after the file system is upgraded to VMFS5. The vSphere Client automatically aligns VMFS3 and VMFS5 partitions along the 1 MB boundary at creation. To obtain the better 1 MB alignment, a 64 KB aligned partition must be deleted and recreated using vSphere Client and an ESXi 5.0 or later host.

## SAN multipathing

SAN Multipathing is a fault-tolerance and performance enhancement technique. There are multiple physical and logical paths between the host and the storage device through different controllers and switches.

Paths are accessed based on the configured path policies. SAN path policies can have a significant effect on storage performance. For most Active/Passive storage arrays, ESXi uses the Most Recently Used (MRU) path policy by default. Fixed path policy is not recommended

for Active/Passive arrays because it can cause frequent and rapid path switching resulting in slow LUN access.

For most Active/Active storage arrays, ESXi defaults to use of the Fixed path policy. For optimal performance, the Round Robin path policy can be considered.

Round Robin path policy can improve storage performance in some environments by cycling I/O requests through all active paths. However, not all storage arrays support the Round Robin path policy. Check the storage array documentation or the storage vendor to make sure the Round Robin path policy is supported and recommended for your storage array and configuration.

## File systems

VMware ESXi host supports two different file systems for virtual machines: VMFS and NFS.

### VMFS

VMFS is the VMware native high-performance clustered file system, supported either locally or network-attached.

### NFS

The NFS distributed file system has been in use for nearly 20 years. NFS is strictly network-attached and uses Remote Procedure Calls to access remote files.

### Raw Disk

VMware vSphere supports storing virtual machine guest files on a raw disk. Raw device mapping (RDM) provides a mechanism for a virtual machine to have direct access to a LUN on the physical storage subsystem (iSCSI or Fiber Channel only). RDM is a mapping file in a separate VMFS volume that acts as a raw physical storage device. It has some benefits, but it also has limitations, and is not suitable in every situation. Consult the VMware documentation to thoroughly understand Raw Device Mapping before using it.

## Recommendations

### Storage network

Either iSCSI or NFS would be suitable. iSCSI is a block-based protocol operating at a lower level, while NFS is a file-based protocol operating at a higher level. However, iSCSI has the advantage of being slightly more efficient. The following implementation is recommended for both iSCSI and NFS.

- For better iSCSI performance, enable jumbo frames when possible. Jumbo frames reduce packet-processing overhead, thus improving CPU efficiency of storage I/O. Use of jumbo frames requires end-to-end hardware support from iSCSI adapters, storage arrays, and hardware network switches. The default Ethernet frame size is 1500.
- It is recommend that both iSCSI and NFS have their own dedicated physical network to minimize network interference from other packet sources. If this is not possible, logical separation using VLAN can be used.



### RAID level

RAID 10 provides the most balanced performance, redundancy, cost, and write penalty, so it is the recommended RAID level. Other RAID levels may still be used to build virtual disks to better fit specific workload requirements.

### Virtual disk mode

Mitel supports the default Dependent virtual disk mode. Dependent disk mode allows temporary disk snapshot, which Mitel supports during backup and upgrade. Virtual disks of Mitel virtual appliances must not contain snapshots during normal operation.

### Virtual disk types

Mitel applications are real-time applications and require high system performance during operation. It is preferred that all disk spaces be allocated during system installation so that they are ready to roll during operation. Therefore, the thin-provisioned disk type is not recommended. Thick Provisioned with lazy-zeroed virtual disk type (the default) is recommended because it has a more balanced disk performance and OVA deployment time.

### Partition alignment

Use the latest version of VMware software to perform disk partitioning and formatting, for optimum disk drives preparation.

### SAN multipathing

Enabling SAN Multipathing is recommended for fault-tolerance and performance enhancements. Although Multipathing usually requires additional networking equipment such as HBAs and network switches, the benefits outweigh the costs.

### File system

In general, VMware VMFS is recommended for use as the underlying file system because VFMS is native to VMware and it is designed specifically for the VMware environment.

## Other considerations

### CPU utilization

Since a higher level of CPU resources is needed to process higher levels of networking traffic, it is important to ensure sufficient CPU resources are available, without limiting the maximum network throughput. It is important to monitor CPU utilization of high-throughput workloads to ensure that the CPU resource is sufficient.

### Separate physical NIC

If a physical NIC is shared by multiple virtual machines, each virtual machine could affect the performance of other VMs. For best network performance, use separate physical NICs for heavy networking I/O virtual machines and latency-sensitive virtual machines. 10 Gbps NICs

have multi-queue support, so this recommendation typically does not apply, as long as a sufficient number of queues is available.

### Jumbo frames

ESXi supports the use of Jumbo Frames with iSCSI. ESXi allows Jumbo Frames with MTU size up to 9000 bytes. When a Jumbo Frame is used for iSCSI traffic, the following must be true:

- The network must support Jumbo Frames of that MTU size end-to-end to be effective.
- Network equipment and storage vendors must be consulted to ensure that the physical NICs, iSCSI HBAs, and network switches support Jumbo Frames from end to end.
- Network switches have been set up and verified for Jumbo Frames, to ensure proper operation on the network.

### vSphere flash read cache

Flash Read Cache accelerates virtual machine performance through the use of host-resident flash-based storage devices as a cache. VMware Virtual Flash configured as a cache can be used for virtual machine migration, read caching, and write caching. VMware Distributed Resource Scheduling (DRS), and vSphere High Availability support Virtual Flash.

### Storage hardware acceleration

The functionality of hardware acceleration enables an ESXi host to integrate compliant storage arrays and off-load specific virtual machine and storage management operations to the storage hardware. Off-loading tasks to storage hardware means that the storage consumes less CPU, memory and storage fabric bandwidth on the ESXi hosts. Storage hardware acceleration works only when appropriate hosts and storage arrays are combined. Verify with the hardware vendors to make sure that storage hardware acceleration is supported.

### VMware-specific optimizations

When using ESXi with a SAN, use the following tips to avoid SAN problems.

- Put only one VMFS data store on each LUN. Multiple VMFS data store on one single LUN is a configuration that is not recommended.
- Do not change the path policy the system sets unless the implications of the change are fully understood.
- Ensure there is no single point of failure from the SAN to the host HBAs.
- I/O device latency should not be consistently greater than 20-30 ms (for more information, refer to this VMware vSphere Blog post: <http://blogs.vmware.com/vsphere/2012/06/troubleshooting-storage-performance-in-vsphere-part-2.html>).
- Tune the virtual network adapter (VMXNET3). Some of the default parameters may not suit your environment (retries and time out values, for example). In that case, fine tuning of parameters may be required.
- If the virtual machine is using an LSI Logic vHBA, the reqCallThreshold value could be adjusted.

The lower the reqCallThreshold value, the lower the time the I/O requests are likely to stay in the vHBA queue. If reqCallThreshold is set to 1, it means the I/O will be dispatched to the lower layer even there is only one I/O request in the LSI Logic vHBA queue. The default reqCallThreshold value is 8, and it is a system-wide configuration on a ESXi host.

### vSphere pluggable storage architecture

VMware vSphere employs the vSphere Pluggable Storage Architecture (PSA) in its storage subsystem. PSA is essentially a collection of plugins inside the VMkernel layer of the ESXi host. The top-level plugin in the PSA is the Multipathing Plugin (MPP). MPP defines how vSphere manages and accesses storage, including load balancing, path selection, and fail over. VMware provides the Native Multipathing Plugin (NMP) as its MPP, but storage vendors may also provide their own MPP implementations.

Within each MPP, including VMware NMP are two sub-level plugins: the Storage Array Type Plugin (SATP) and the Path Selection Plugin (PSP). SATP handles path fail over and PSP handles load balancing.

Depending on the type of storage arrays used, the default PSP policy could be:

- **Fixed:** The default policy for most active-active arrays.
- **Most Recently Used:** The default policy for most active-passive arrays.
- **Round Robin:** The default policy for some active-active and active-passive arrays.

For best performance, check with your storage vendor to obtain the appropriate plugins, if available.

## Reference

VMware Publication: *vSphere Storage* (for ESXi 5.5 and vCenter Server 5.5)  
<http://pubs.vmware.com/vsphere-55/topic/com.vmware.ICbase/PDF/vsphere-esxi-vcenter-server-55-storage-guide.pdf>



